

:: LinkPoint 3000
Application ID: L3CRD31 CARDnet Reference
User Manual

© copyright 2002 LinkPoint International, Inc. All rights reserved.



LinkPoint[®]
INTERNATIONAL

LinkPoint 3000/LinkPack 3000 Restaurant/Retail Specifications Reference Manual

CARDNET
Version 4.0
December 18, 2002



LinkPoint® 3000 Retail Specifications Reference Manual—Retail/Restaurant Cardnet; Application ID L3CRD31

Manual Number 4.0

Published December 2002

LinkPoint International, Inc.
5310 Derry Avenue Suite W
Agoura Hills, CA 91301
www.linkpoint.com

Printed in the United States of America.

© Copyright 2002 LinkPoint® International, Inc. All rights reserved.

Under the copyright laws, no part of this publication may be copied, distributed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior written agreement of LinkPoint International, Inc. LinkPoint International reserves the right to make changes to this document and the products it describes without prior notice. LinkPoint International shall not be liable for inadvertent technical errors or omissions made herein, nor for incidental or consequential damages resulting from the performance or use of this product.

LinkPoint 2000/3000, PrintPoint 1000, PrintPoint 3000, and LoadPoint are service marks (SM) of LinkPoint International, Inc. Printer 250, Printer 900, PrintPak 350, PINpads 101, 1000, 201, 2000, and Zontalk 2000 are trademarks of VeriFone, Inc. VeriFone is a registered trademark of VeriFone, Inc. Citizen iDP Printers 562 and 3530 are trademarks of CBM, Inc. Magtek is a registered trademark of Magtek, Inc.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide a reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at their expense.

Caution: Danger of explosion if lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same of equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.

NOTICE

LinkPoint International reserves the right to make changes to specifications at any time and without notice. The information furnished in this publication is believed to be accurate and reliable; however, no responsibility is assumed by LinkPoint International for its use.

Page	Brief Description Of Change	Revision Date
i-vii	Updated margins and page listings for Table of Contents	05/14/2002
72	Rewrote text so that all information can fit on the page	05/14/2002
190-211	Labeled Receipt Samples	05/14/2002
60	Changed #1KFLR parameter default from 899999 to 5000	05/14/2002
74	Added a Gift/Loyalty Card Response Chart	05/14/2002
74	Added a Gift/Loyalty Card Modem Speed information	05/17/2002
68	Added new #PSWD1 settings	05/17/2002
71	Added password table message of blanketed settings	05/17/2002
78	Changed Auto Close to include ECA information	05/21/2002
60	Added Zontalk Parameter #1MPHN – DBA Phone #	05/21/2002
82	Added Zontalk Parameter description #1MPHN – DBA Phone #	05/21/2002
71	Changed Password Duplicate Transactions (Not Used)	05/21/2002
7	Added Helpful Tip: Green Arrow Keys	05/21/2002
12	Added Local Function ENTER 97 to the General Features	05/21/2002
17	Removed Function to change the device ID General Features	05/21/2002
14	Added; Terminal ID “view only” function, to General Features	5/21/2002
15	Updated account range information to Retail Features	5/21/2002
17	Added; Ability to zero out all unadjusted tips during the batch close process to the Restaurant Features	5/21/2002
17	Edited; Retail tip information to include POS 2000 and Zontalk download to Retail Features.	5/21/2002
17	Added; Retail tip “adjust” information to Retail Features.	5/21/2002
17	Added; The option to add and adjust tips by invoice, sequence, employee ID or by personal account number to Retail Features.	5/21/2002
17	Added; A missing tip report at close and the ability to correct a tip amount before closing the batch to Retail Features.	5/21/2002

Page	Brief Description Of Change	Revision Date
17	Added; Allows entry of employee identification numbers (up to four digits) to Retail Features.	05/21/2002
17	Added; Produces individual employee and employee's totals reports to Retail Features.	05/21/2002
17	Added; Ability to zero out all unadjusted tips during the batch close process to Retail Features.	05/21/2002
17	Added; Ability to adjust a transaction amount to add incidentals to the original ticket to Retail Features	05/21/2002
17	Added; Enhanced transaction report includes all debit card details including: amount, cash back, transaction fee, tip and total to Retail Features.	05/21/2002
17	Added; Enhanced item detail report to include all debit card transaction details including: amount, tip, cash back, surcharge and total to Retail Features.	05/21/2002
113	Edited: EBT Food Stamp Return title and body to include food stamp and transaction code 15 and receipt title to include food stamp purchase.	05-29-2002
116	Edited: EBT Food Stamp Force Purchase title and body to include reference to food stamp, transaction code 11 and receipt title to include food stamp purchase.	05-29-2002
119	Edited: EBT Food Stamp Force Return title and body to included reference to food stamp, transaction code 16 and receipt title to include food stamp purchase.	05-29-2002
122	Edited: EBT Food Stamp Balance Inquiry title and body to included reference to food stamp and transaction code 17.	05-29-2002
113-115	Added: EBT Food Stamp Purchase and Sample Receipt.	05-29-2002
66	Added: #TDMSP Gift/Loyalty Host Modem Speed 3000	07-10-2002
60	Removed: Highlighted Statement - #BMAX Max. Number of Items in Batch (500 is the maximum for FDR host)	07-10-2002
57	Added: #1DTTP Gift/Loyalty Card Tip Y/[N] = Y	07-10-2002
65	Changed Value : #PSWD1 = 000000000101001100001110	07-10-2002
66	Added: #TDSEC Phone Number of: 18777103335	07-10-2002

Page	Brief Description Of Change	Revision Date
66	Added: #TDTEL Phone Number of : 18886632531	07-10-2002
69	Changed Value for #1KFLR to: 5000	07-10-2002
69	Change Information & Value: #1CAPR (Future Use) and Value = Leave Blank	07-10-2002
69	Changed Information & Value: #1CACT (Future Use) and Value = Leave Blank	07-10-2002
69	Changed Information # 1CAMM (Future Use)	07-10-2002
73	Changed Information: AMEX Split Dial - The LinkPoint 3000 will then send captured transactions for deposit during batch closure.	07-10-2002
66	Changed Information: #STR03 – Voice approval phone number	07-10-2002
83	Changed CVV2 Prompt Information: Either press [1], key-in the CVV2 information located on the card and press [ENTER] or press [0] = Bypass CVV2, [2] = CVV2 Illegible, or [9] = DVV2 Not On Card.	07-10-2002
83	Changed Base Amount Prompt Information from Base Amount to Total Amount for the display information and also in the information section.	7-10-2002
82-85	Changed prompts sequence to reflect changes to recurring transactions layout.	7-10-2002
90	Removed CVV2 prompts and information	7-10-2002
166	Changed prompt from Enter Total Amount to Return Amount	7-10-2002
160-163	Offline: Changed prompts sequence to accommodate new changes to the application.	7-10-2002
165-167	Returns: Changed prompts sequence to accommodate new changes to the application.	7-10-2002
169-172	Auth Only: Changed prompts sequence to accommodate new changes to the application.	7-10-2002
57	#1CAMT: Changed value from 300 to 200	7-10-2002
209	Batch Close - Added: Press the [CLEAR] button to clear the terminal and return to the idle prompt.	8-27-2002
113	EBT Food Stamp Force Purchase (Voucher): Code 11	10-04-02

Page	Brief Description Of Change	Revision Date
116	EBT Food Stamp Return (Voucher): Code 16	10-04-02
20	Batch History Report – Changed reference of eight batches to nine batches.	11-22-02
222	Batch History Report – Changed reference of eight batches to nine batches.	11-22-02
239	Batch History Report – Changed reference of eight batches to nine batches.	11-22-02
57, 69	TeleCheck Id Floor Limit Amount, example: 5000 = \$50.00 Changed default from \$50.00 to \$0.00	12-18-02

© Copyright 2002 LinkPoint® International, Inc. All rights reserved.

INTRODUCTION	1
Printers.....	1
PIN pad Devices	1
Check Readers.....	1
GETTING STARTED	2
Unpacking	2
Installation	3
Maintenance	4
Returning the Terminal for Service.....	4
Entering Alphanumeric Data from the Keypad.....	4
KEYPAD/TEMPLATE DESIGN.....	5
KEYPAD/TEMPLATE CHART	6
KEYPAD/TEMPLATE DEFINITIONS.....	7
LinkPoint 3000 Specifications.....	11
GENERAL FEATURES	12
Terminal Features.....	12
Application Software Features — General.....	12
Retail Features	15
Restaurant Features.....	16
Other Software Features	16
Gratuity Guidelines on Receipt.....	16
Gift/Loyalty Card Programming	17
American Express Split Dial Authorization.....	17
Check Processing.....	17
Address Verification Service (AVS).....	17
IMPRINT CARD NOW! Prompt.....	17
Open/Close Tab Processing	17
Automatic Gratuity	18
Debit Card Processing.....	18
Commercial Card Processing.....	18
Transaction Sequence Number.....	18
Electronic Commerce Transaction	18
Card Type Confirmation.....	19
Transaction Space Management.....	19
Password Protection.....	19
Lock Mode.....	19
Demo Mode.....	20
Idle Display.....	20
PIN Pad Processing	20
Printer Processing	21

Thermal Printers	21
Pre-Printing	21
Masking on Cardholder Receipts	21
Calculator Function	21
Full Program Downloads	22
Batch History.....	22
Terminal Initiated Auto Settlement	22
Debit/EBT Auto Reversal.....	22
Synchronous Communications	23
Pre-Dial	23
Boot Mode Functions	24
Boot Mode Passwords	24
Cold Boot	25
Date and Time Setup.....	26
Printer Port Setup	27
RS232 Port Setup.....	28
PIN pad Port Setup.....	29
Model Number	31
Clear Memory	33
TERMINAL DIAGNOSTICS.....	35
Display Test—Press [1].....	36
Keyboard Test— Press [2].....	36
Clock Test— Press [3].....	36
Dialer Test— Press [4]	37
Line Voltage Test— Press [5].....	39
Modem Originate Test— Press [6].....	40
Modem Answer Test— Press [7]	41
Card Reader Test— Press [8].....	42
Serial Port Test — Press [9].....	44
Memory Analysis — Press [0]	45
DOWNLOAD PROCEDURES	47
Telephone Download (No application loaded)	47
Telephone Download (Shortcut with Application already loaded)	51
Direct PC-to-POS Download	53
Direct PC-to-POS Download (Shortcut).....	58
POS-to-POS (Master/Slave Download)	60
DOWNLOAD PARAMETERS	62
Field Type Codes.....	62
Memory Locations	62
Account Range String Description	73

Password Protect Settings	74
TeleCheck Check Service	75
TeleCheck Check Service Prompt Options	76
Gift/Loyalty Card Host Response Messages	77
Gift/Loyalty Card Modem Speed Setup	77
SprintNet	79
DIAL STRING CODES.....	80
HOST PARAMETERS AND OPTIONS.....	81
Address Verification (#PAVS).....	81
Adjust Key	81
AMEX Split Dial (#1AOPT).....	81
AMEX Split Dial Terminal ID (#1ATID).....	81
Auto Close (#ACTME)	81
Auto Print Second Receipt (#PRSEC).....	82
Auto Report at Batch Close (#ARPT).....	82
Bypass Card Present Prompt (#CPBYP).....	82
Card Present Default (#CPYES)	82
Confirm Amount (#CNFRM)	83
DBA Name, Address, State and ZIP (#H1-#H6)	83
Debit Cash Back (#DEBCB).....	83
Debit Cash Back Surcharge Amount (#DCBSC).....	83
Debit Purchase Surcharge Amount (#DPOSC).....	83
Default Open Tab Amount (#DAUTH)	83
Detail On Settlement Report.....	83
Employee ID Totals On Settlement Report.....	84
Enable Employee ID Text (#STR01-2).....	84
Gift/Loyalty Cards	84
TeleCheck ECA Merchant ID Number (#1CAMI).....	84
Merchant ID Number (#1MMID).....	84
Open Tab (#BTAB).....	84
PIN Pad Key Management (#PNKEY)	84
PIN Pad Type (#PNTYP).....	85
Printer Type (#PRTYP).....	85
Receipt Amount Text	85
Receipt Cardholder Name	85
Receipt Invoice Number	85
Receipt Promissory Footer (#FLEX1-#FLEX3).....	85
Receipt Trailer Lines (#T1-T2).....	85
Restaurant/Tip Processing (#FREST)	85
Sequence Number	86

TRANSACTIONS.....	87
Retail Credit Sale (Non-Debit)	87
Sale Receipt Sample	93
Restaurant Sale (Dine-In).....	95
Sale Receipt Sample.....	99
Debit Sale Receipt Sample	105
EBT/Debit Electronic Benefits Transfer	106
EBT Cash Benefit Purchase (Authorization) Code 10, CB Authorization.....	106
EBT Cash Benefit Purchase (Authorization) Receipt Sample.....	109
EBT Cash Benefit Balance Inquiry: Code 17, CB Balance Inquiry.....	110
EBT Cash Benefit Inquiry Receipt Sample	112
EBT Food Stamp Purchase: Code 10.....	113
EBT Food Stamp Purchase Receipt Sample.....	115
EBT Food Stamp Return: Code 15	116
EBT Food Stamp Return Receipt Sample	118
EBT Food Stamp Force Purchase (Voucher): Code 11	119
EBT Food Stamp Force Purchase Receipt Sample (Voucher).....	121
EBT Food Stamp Force Return (Voucher): Code 16.....	122
EBT Food Stamp Force Return Receipt Sample (Voucher)	124
EBT Food Stamp Balance Inquiry: Code 17	125
EBT Food Stamp Benefit Inquiry Receipt Sample.....	127
Gift Card Activate.....	128
Gift Card Activate Receipt Sample.....	130
Gift Card Redemption	131
Gift Card Activate Receipt Sample.....	133
Gift Card Reload	134
Gift Card Reload Receipt Sample	137
Gift Card Return.....	138
Gift Card Return Receipt Sample.....	140
Gift Card Block Activation	141
Gift Card Return Receipt Sample.....	144
Gift Card Balance Inquiry.....	145
Gift Card Balance Receipt Sample	147
Gift Card Summary Report and Batch Clear.....	148
Gift Card Balance Receipt Sample	150
Gift Card Reprint.....	151
Gift Card Redeem Duplicate Receipt Sample	152
Loyalty Card Activate.....	153
Loyalty Card Activate Receipt Sample.....	155
Loyalty Card Add Points	156

Loyalty Card Add Receipt Sample	158
Loyalty Card Redemption	159
Loyalty Card Redeem Receipt Sample.....	161
Loyalty Card Balance Inquiry.....	162
Loyalty Card Balance Receipt Sample	164
Loyalty Card Reprint.....	165
Loyalty Card Duplicate Receipt Sample	166
Off-line Sale	168
Off-line Sale Receipt Sample	172
Return (Credit).....	173
Return Receipt Sample	176
Authorization Only (Auth Only)	177
Open Bar Tab	185
Open Tab Receipt Sample.....	189
Void	191
Check.....	194
Check Approval Receipt Sample	199
TeleCheck ECA Sale.....	200
Telecheck ECA Sale Receipt Sample.....	205
ECA Change	206
Telecheck ECA Change Receipt Sample	208
ECA Void.....	209
Telecheck ECA Void Receipt Sample.....	210
ECA Review	211
ECA Report.....	212
Telecheck ECA Report Sample	213
ECA Close.....	214
Telecheck ECA Close Receipt Sample	216
ECA Clear Batch.....	217
Close Batch	219
Operator Initiated Close Batch.....	219
Close Batch Report	222
Close Batch Report Sample.....	222
Adjustments	224
Edit.....	224
Close Tab.....	227
Close Tab Receipt.....	230
Add Tip.....	231
Review	233
Batch Totals Review.....	233

Batch History Review	234
Card Type Totals Review	236
Employee Totals Review	238
Review Transaction	239
Batch/Employee Detail Review	241
Open Tab Review	243
Unadjusted Tip Review	245
Card Type Detail Review	247
REPORTS	249
Line Item Report	249
Line Item Report	250
Batch History Totals Report	251
Batch Totals History Report	252
Batch Summary Report By Card Type.....	253
Batch Summary Report By Card Type.....	254
Employee Totals Report.....	255
Individual Employee ID Totals Report.....	256
Employee ID Totals Report for All Employees.....	257
Batch Item Detail Report.....	258
Batch Item Detail Report	259
Employee Detail Report.....	260
Employee Detail Report.....	261
Open Tab Detail Report.....	262
Open Tab Detail Report.....	263
Missing Tip Report	264
Missing Tip Report	264
Missing Tip Report.....	265
Card Type Detail Report.....	266
Card Type Detail Report.....	267
Reprint.....	268
Reprint Last Transaction	268
Reprint Selected Transaction	269
MANAGEMENT	270
Batch Clear	270
Demo Mode.....	272
Lock Mode.....	273
SETUP	274
Update Host Options	274
Setup Passwords	275
Local Dial Options.....	276

Dial Type.....	276
Local Printer Options	277
Disable Printer	277
Tip Options.....	278
Auto Gratuity % Tip Guideline	278
Idle Time-out/Key Beep	280
Setup Report.....	281
View Setup	282
Setup Report Sample	284
LOCAL FUNCTIONS	286
ENTER 40: View Last Three Responses from Host.....	286
ENTER 44: View Last Three Batches	287
ENTER 97: View Application Date	287
ENTER 98: Program Name and Prompts File Revision Information.....	288
APPENDIX A — ERROR CONDITIONS.....	289
APPENDIX B—PROMPTS, ERROR MESSAGES AND TROUBLESHOOTING.....	292
APPENDIX C—ADDITIONAL TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDELINES.....	296
GLOSSARY	297
INDEX.....	301

INTRODUCTION

Congratulations on your choice of the LinkPoint® 3000 point-of-sale (POS) terminal. The LinkPoint 3000 is ideal for the retail needs of you and your merchants. Scientifically engineered to exceed the quality found in current terminal technology, the LinkPoint 3000 combines user-friendly operation with “soft,” programmable functions. The screen-addressable keys and an innovative backlit display panel make the terminal operation quick and easy. With expanded serial ports, the LinkPoint 3000 is compatible with all major printers. The terminal also contains additional serial ports for PIN pads, check readers and other peripherals.

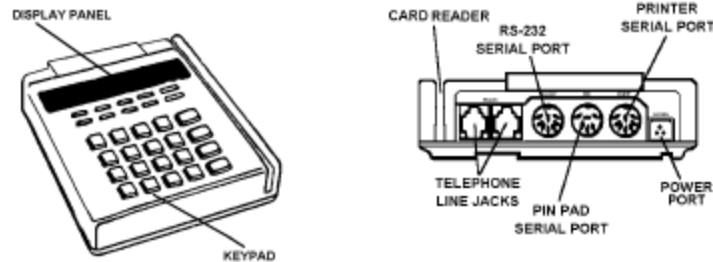


Figure 1

This manual includes step-by-step guides through specific transactions and operations, and shows how to keep the terminal in peak operating condition. Words that appear in capital letters and brackets, [LIKE THIS], stand for keys on the terminal keypad. Words that appear in capital letters without brackets, LIKE THIS, stand for display messages.

Printers

The LinkPoint 3000 terminal supports all major terminal printers. The LinkPoint 3000 is compatible with: LinkPoint's PrintPoint 1000, 3000, VeriFone's P250, P900, PrintPak 350 and Citizen's iDP562 printers. Printers attach easily to the LinkPoint 3000 terminal with a connecting cable. If a merchant does not use an electronic printer, a manual imprinter is normally provided to produce transaction records for both the merchant and the customer.

PIN pad Devices

The application programmed in the LinkPoint 3000 terminal supports VeriFone PINpads 101, 1000, 201, 2000 and the LinkPoint BankPoint for debit transactions. PIN pads attach easily to the PIN pad connector on the back of the terminal (please refer to the separate PIN pad manual for installation and operating instructions). DUKPT encryption method is supported.

Check Readers

The LinkPoint 3000 supports eN2500 check readers for check guarantee services.

GETTING STARTED

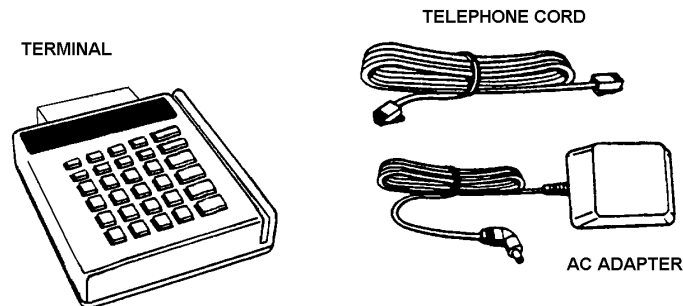
Unpacking

Carefully inspect the shipping carton and its contents for any damage that may have occurred during shipping. If the terminal is damaged, file a claim immediately with the shipping company or carrier and notify LinkPoint International.

Do not try to use a damaged terminal!

To unpack the LinkPoint 3000:

1. With the shipping carton right side up, open the carton's lid.
2. Lift the terminal, its AC adapter and line cord with modular plugs up and out of the box.
3. Remove the terminal from its protective bubble wrap and place the bubble wrap back in the shipping carton. Remove the AC adapter from its protective box and return the box to the shipping carton. Close the shipping carton and save the shipping materials so that the unit can be repacked for shipping or moving in the future.
4. Place the terminal on a desk or tabletop. When choosing a place for the LinkPoint 3000 terminal, avoid areas with:
 - ◆ Direct sunlight or objects that radiate heat
 - ◆ Excessive dust
 - ◆ Electrical devices that cause excessive voltage variations such as air conditioners, space heaters, fans, or high-frequency security devices



Shipping Carton Contents
Figure 2

Installation

Installing the LinkPoint 3000 terminal is simple and requires no tools.

1. Connect the AC adapter's triangular end to the power input at the rear of the LinkPoint 3000 terminal (Figure 3).

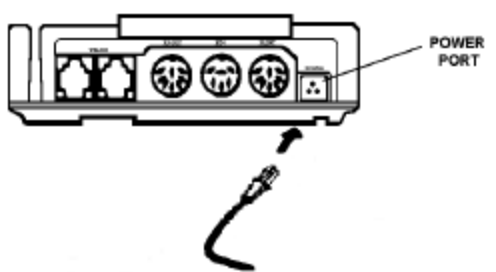


Figure 3

2. Plug the adapter into a 120-volt electrical outlet (Figure 4) or into a quality surge suppressor.

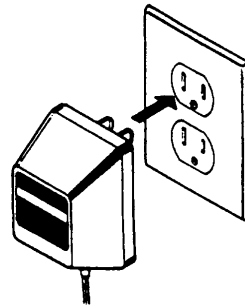


Figure 4

3. Insert one end of the telephone line cord into one of the modular jacks at the rear of the terminal. Insert the other end of the line cord into a modular telephone wall jack, just as one would connect a telephone (see Figure 5). The modular plug may be inserted directly into the wall jack or use a 4-prong adapter (not included) for older 4-prong jacks.

Note: A standard telephone may be connected to the other modular jack at the rear of the terminal.

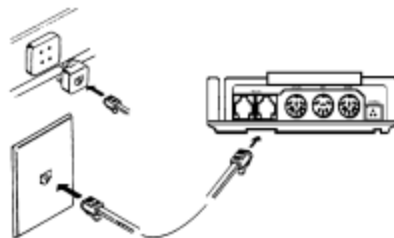


Figure 5

4. If the PrintPoint 1000, 3000, VeriFone P250, P900, PrintPak 350, Citizen iDP562, iDP3530 or other compatible printer is used with the LinkPoint 3000 terminal, please refer to the manual packaged with the printer for installation and operating instructions.
5. When the terminal is plugged in, it will display the message APP. NOT AVAILABLE (unless an application is pre-downloaded).

Maintenance

The LinkPoint 3000 system does not need preventive maintenance. However, LinkPoint International does recommend periodic cleaning of the keypad, using a soft brush to remove any dust. Because the terminal can be damaged by liquids, do not spray liquid cleaners directly on the terminal. Always apply the cleaner to the cloth before cleaning the terminal. To avoid costly downtime, LinkPoint International also recommends protecting the terminal with a surge protector.

Returning the Terminal for Service

LinkPoint International has both warranty and non-warranty LinkPoint 3000 services. Refer to your sales agreement for specific details on coverage. To repair or replace the LinkPoint 3000 terminal, please contact LinkPoint International or your service provider for more information.

Entering Alphanumeric Data from the Keypad

The LinkPoint 3000 keypad has 30 keys that can be used to enter as many as 47 different alphanumeric characters. To enter numbers and special characters (i.e., +) simply press the appropriate key. Alpha characters can be entered in one of two modes: single or locked. The “single” mode is selected by pressing the [ALPHA] key once followed by the corresponding character key. For example, to enter the letter “A” press [ALPHA] [VOID] and “A” will display. The “locked” mode is selected by pressing the [ALPHA] key twice followed by the corresponding character keys. For example, to enter the word “LINKPOINT” press [ALPHA] [ALPHA] [2] [REVIEW] [+/-] [1] [5] [4] [REVIEW] [+/-] [8] and “LINKPOINT” will appear. To release the “locked” upper case mode, press the [ALPHA] key once.

The keypad design, chart and definitions for the LinkPoint 3000 begin on the next page.

KEYPAD/TEMPLATE DESIGN

LinkPoint 3000

LinkPoint 3000				
A	B -	C sp	D +	E ,
VOID	π	π	π	RETURN
F ‘	G “	H :	I ;	J @
SALE	ATM/DEBIT	CHECK	REVIEW	CLOSE
K	L	M	N (CLEAR ALPHA BACK SPACE NO ENTER YES
1	2	3)	
O	P	Q	R)	
4	5	6	X	
S	T	U	V !	PREV
7	8	9	—	
W	X	Y	Z &	NEXT
*	0	#	+	
←			→	

KEYPAD/TEMPLATE CHART

LINKPOINT 3000 ALPHA/SYMBOL ASSIGNMENTS		
Key Assignment	ALPHA MODE [ALPHA] is depressed once or twice prior to pressing the corresponding key	Symbol displayed when pressing the corresponding key directly (NO ALPHA KEY)
[VOID]	A	. (period)
Left Green [π]	B	- (hyphen)
Center Green [π]	C	Space
Right Green [π]	D	+
[RETURN]	E	, (comma)
[SALE]	F	' (apostrophe)
[ATM/DEBIT]	G	" (quote)
[CHECK]	H	: (colon)
[REVIEW]	I	; (semi-colon)
[CLOSE]	J	@ ("at")
[1]	K	1
[2]	L	2
[3]	M	3
[÷]	N	(
[4]	O	4
[5]	P	5
[6]	Q	6
[x]	R)
[7]	S	7
[8]	T	8
[9]	U	9
[-]	V	!
[*]	W	* (asterisk)
[0]	X	0
[#]	Y	# (pound)
[+]	Z	& (ampersand)

KEYPAD/TEMPLATE DEFINITIONS

VOID (A .)

This key is used to delete a transaction from the batch off-line. This key is used to enter the '.' (decimal point or period) symbol or along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'A'.

⇦(B -)

This key is used to make selection from screen menus, is used to enter the '-' (dash) symbol, or is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'B'.

⇦(C sp)

This key is used to make selection from screen menus, is used to enter a space symbol, or is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'C'.

⇦(D +)

This key is used to make selection from screen menus, is used to enter a '+' symbol, or is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'D'.

Helpful Tip: Green Arrow Keys

⇦ ⇨ ⇩ ⇪

These arrows to the left are used throughout this reference manual represent green colored soft keys with arrows printed on them. These green arrow keys are located just under the terminal display.

RETURN (E ,)

RETURN is used to initiate a credit or debit card refund transaction, is used to enter a ',' (comma) symbol, or is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'E'.

SALE (F ')

SALE is used to initiate a sale or open tab transaction (as applicable), is used to enter a "'" (single quote) symbol, or is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'F'.

ATM/DEBIT (G “)

ATM/DEBIT is used to initiate a debit sale transaction, is used to enter a "" (double quote) symbol, or is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'G'.

CHECK (H :)

CHECK is used to initiate a check approval transaction, is used to enter a ':' (colon) symbol, or is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'H'.

REVIEW (I ;)

REVIEW is used to initiate the various batch total and detail review functions, is used to enter a ';' (semicolon) symbol, or is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'I'.

CLOSE (J @)

CLOSE is used to initiate a batch close or settlement session), is used to enter a '@' symbol, or is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'J'.

0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9 (X,K,L,M,O,P;Q,S T U)

These keys are used to enter the numerals 0-9 respectively or are used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letters X, K, L, M, O, P, Q, S, T, U respectively. Pressing the [0] key at the idle state invokes the calculator.

*** (← W)**

This key is used to enter the '*' symbol, is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'W' and is used to view additional screens (left scroll) of data (e.g. for viewing transaction detail where multiple screens of data apply).

(→ Y)

This key is used to enter the '#' symbol, is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'Y' and is used to view additional screens (right scroll) of data (e.g. for viewing transaction detail where multiple screens of data apply).

. (N '(' PRINT)

This key is used to indicate division when in calculator mode, is used to enter a '(' symbol, is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter 'N' and is used to initiate the various print report and reprint functions.

X (R ') AUTH ONLY

This key is used to indicate multiplication when in calculator mode, is used to enter a ')' symbol, is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter R and is used to initiate an auth only transaction that is authorized but not captured to the current batch.

- (V ! OFFLINE)

This key is used to indicate subtraction when in calculator mode, is used to enter a ! symbol, is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter V and is used to initiate an offline sale transaction.

+ (Z & ADJUST)

This key is used to indicate addition when in calculator mode, is used to enter an ampersand (&) symbol, is used along with the [ALPHA] key to enter the letter Z and is used to initiate the various adjust functions (including close tab).

CLEAR

CLEAR is used to abort the transaction or function in progress and return to the idle state of the terminal.

ALPHA (LAST MENU)

[ALPHA] is used in conjunction with other keys to input alpha characters directly from the keyboard. Each terminal key has a letter associated with it. Alpha characters are entered by pressing [ALPHA] and then pressing the appropriate key. Pressing [ALPHA] twice will enable alpha lock mode; pressing [ALPHA] again will disable alpha lock mode. When alpha input does not apply, the [ALPHA] key can also be used throughout the application to return to the last menu or to display menu options at the idle state.

BACK SPACE (NO/PREVIOUS)

[BACK SPACE] is used to delete the last character entered during data entry (returns to input prompt if all characters are deleted), is used to move to the previous item in the list when reviewing a list, or is used for NO in answer to yes/no questions.

ENTER = (YES/NEXT)

ENTER/= is used to terminate data entry; is used to calculate a new total in calculator mode; is used to bypass entry of a field; is used to move to the next prompt or item in the list; is used to answer "yes" to a question and is used at the idle state to enter special function codes to initiate other terminal functionality that can not be accessed directly by pressing a single key (see example below).

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
--

Press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

FUNCTION

Enter the function code.

[π] [π] [π]

LinkPoint 3000 Specifications

Microprocessor	Z180 CPU operating at 12.288 MHz
Memory	128k EPROM and 256k battery-backed RAM (standard); up to 1 megabyte (optional)
Display	Two-line 20 character LCD back-lit display
Keypad	30 key alphanumeric keypad Audio feedback tone (short tone for legal key entry, longer tone for illegal key entry)
Card Reader	Track 1 and track 2, bi-directional magnetic stripe card reader
Communications	Internal modem with modular jack Standard Bell 103/212A series, V.21 and V.22 high- speed dial-up modem, 300 and 1200 baud
Peripheral Ports	3xRS232 serial ports for PIN pad, roll printers, slip printers, bar code wands, etc.
Power Connector	Three-pin male-DIN power connector
Telco Connector	Six-position modular jack
Operating Environment	32° to 104° F, 0° to 40° C Humidity: 5% to 90% relative humidity; no condensation
Power Requirements	Voltage: 120 volts AC, 60 HZ Power: 10W Adapter Output: 9 VAC, 1.2 amps Consumption: 450 mA, idle; 500 mA, off-hook status
Dimensions	Height: 1.98 in (50.4 mm) Width: 5.60 in (143.1 mm) Depth: 6.50 in (165.4 mm)
Weight	Shipping Weight: 2.74 lb. (1.24 kg)

GENERAL FEATURES

Terminal Features

Application Software Features — General

- ◆ Split dial “authorization only” request functionality for American Express and Discover/NOVUS card transactions have been added. Downloadable parameters are now available for primary and secondary dial-up phone numbers and the terminal ID.
- ◆ Local functions available are: a) view last three host responses ([ENTER] [4][0]); b) view last three settled batches ([ENTER] [4][4]); c) date and time application version was built ([ENTER] [9][7]); d) program name and date ([ENTER] [9][8]).
- ◆ Track 2 data is always transmitted to the host on swiped transactions, unless track 2 is damaged (then track 1 data is sent). The name is pulled from track 1 for printing on receipts.
- ◆ Check reader functionality for TeleCheck, including TeleCheck Electronic Check Acceptance® or ECA® check service.
- ◆ New Zontalk download parameter (#CODE) that is used to send a bank’s or merchant’s unique code to the terminal. This code will then be used by the application to create the download password within the terminal. The password changes periodically.
- ◆ Pre-dial capability to reduce transaction time.
- ◆ Special dial string codes to enable the terminal to dial out under special circumstances such as multiple terminals on one phone line or multiple phone line systems.
- ◆ SprintNet Dial protocol added for host connectivity.
- ◆ The [BACKSPACE] key can be used to either delete a key-in error or to return to the previous prompt.
- ◆ The terminal keyboard may now be “locked” to prohibit unauthorized data entry ([#] [LOCK] PASSWORD).
- ◆ The terminal clock can be set to automatically change for Daylight Savings Time.
- ◆ The terminal calendar automatically recognizes leap year.

- ◆ A feature that allows a code printed on the back of a customer's credit card called Card Verification Value (CVV2) on VISA cards and Card Validation Code (CVC2) on MasterCard to be entered during sale and authorization only transaction processing. The Card Verification Value (CVV2) and the Card Validation Code (CVC2) is a three or more digit number that immediately follows the account number normally printed on the signature panel on the back of the VISA and MasterCard. Requiring this number to be entered during manual entry transactions provides an extra level of fraud protection. *On the terminal and throughout this manual, both values will be referred to as CVV2 only.*
- ◆ Merchant and customer copies of receipts now print separately. This allows, in accordance with certain state laws, truncated (only last four digits visible) credit card numbers and truncated merchant account numbers to appear ONLY on customer receipt copies. The credit card expiration date does not appear on customer receipt copies.
- ◆ An item review feature with the capability of reviewing all transaction details, including actual date and time of each transaction.
- ◆ The ability to view either the terminal totals by card type or individual transaction details by item number.
- ◆ The numbering of all captured transactions for easy review.
- ◆ Six custom header lines for receipts and reports, as well as three flexible customer agreement lines and two trailer message lines.
- ◆ Easy-to-read descriptions of the transaction details, displayed through item review, detail or summary reports.
- ◆ The display message on line 1 and line 2 may be customized. Pressing [CLEAR] will cause line 2 to alternately display the custom message and the default date/time.
- ◆ Operator identification (up to four numeric characters) for clerks or employees who operate the terminal.
- ◆ Pre-print does not include the cardholder information for confidentially purposes—such information prints only when a transaction is accepted or approved.
- ◆ The ability to view and enter dial prefix or dial suffix from the terminal keypad.
- ◆ The capability of reading both track 1 and track 2 card data to allow printing of the cardholder's name under the signature line on credit card receipts. This feature also enables the terminal to accept ATM/debit cards.
- ◆ LinkPoint BankPoint and VeriFone PINpad 101/1000 and 201/2000 capability, configured through the download.
- ◆ Cash-back and tiered transaction fee options available with ATM/debit processing.

- ◆ Debit card reprint functionality.
- ◆ Special instructional reminders on the display and on the receipts: IMPRINT REQUIRED message on keyed transactions; AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED message on ticket only transactions; NOT A COMPLETE SALE on authorization only transactions.
- ◆ Compatible with PrintPoint 1000, 3000, VeriFone's P250, P900, PrintPak 350 and Citizen's iDP 562, iDP 3530 printers.
- ◆ A summary report that prints separate bankcard, credit card, ATM/debit and check processing transactions.
- ◆ Batch summary report printing or displaying grand totals, subtotals for each card type, single-line item details, debit item details and totals, etc.
- ◆ Merchant ID "view-only" function
- ◆ Terminal ID "view only" function.
- ◆ Function to change host telephone numbers when batch is empty.
- ◆ Fraud control features (i.e., display swiped card number, prompt for entry of the last four digits of a credit card and AVS).
- ◆ Password protect features, such as one parameter (#PSWD0) to establish the password; a second parameter (#PSWD1) to activate the password prompt for most transactions and local functions.
- ◆ Double entry requirement to confirm amounts entered for a specific amount and/or greater.
- ◆ Basic calculator functions that allow both viewing and printing of calculations from the idle prompt.
- ◆ TeleCheck bitmap options which set the configuration of the required check service prompts.

Retail Features

- ◆ Account ranges are available to customize options for each card type via Zontalk downloads. The options are:

AVS (Address and Zip Code) option
Direct Marketing w/AVS option
Purchasing Card option
Invoice number option
CVV2
Tax input for business or corporate cards

- ◆ #INVOICE, #PTAX, #PCARD, #CVV2, and #DM parameters are now universal overrides which, when enabled, take precedence over the options enabled within each account range option setting.
- ◆ The customer code field for MasterCard and VISA purchasing card transactions now allows for entry of a maximum of 17 alphanumeric characters. This field is now separate from the order number field.
- ◆ A new parameter for retail tip options that allow businesses, such as beauty salons, to conveniently process transaction gratuities. This is activated by enabling the #RTIP parameter via a POS 2000 or Zontalk download (either full or partial).
- ◆ A special adjust feature uses the [+] key to edit transactions. Feature includes the EDIT, TABS and TIP display that is often used when closing out either an entire batch or an employee's transactions.
- ◆ The option to add and adjust tips by invoice, sequence, employee ID or by personal account number (INV, SEQ, ID, PAN terminal display).
- ◆ A missing tip report at close and the ability to correct a tip amount before closing the batch.
- ◆ Allows entry of employee identification numbers (up to four digits).
- ◆ Produces reports for either an individual employee or for all employees.
- ◆ Ability to zero out all unadjusted tips during the batch close process.
- ◆ Ability to adjust a transaction amount to add incidentals to the original ticket.
- ◆ Enhanced transaction report includes all debit card details including: amount, cash back, transaction fee, tip and total.

- ◆ Enhanced item detail report to include all debit card transaction details including: amount, tip, cash back, surcharge and total.

Restaurant Features

- ◆ A [SALE] key used for dine-in and bar tab.
- ◆ A special adjust feature uses the [+] key to edit transactions. Feature includes the EDIT, TABS and TIP display that is often used when closing out either an entire batch or an employee's transactions.
- ◆ The option to add and adjust tips by invoice, sequence, employee ID or by personal account number (INV, SEQ, ID, PAN terminal display).
- ◆ A missing tip report at close and the ability to correct a tip amount before closing the batch.
- ◆ An open bar tab report.
- ◆ Allows entry of server identification numbers (up to four digits).
- ◆ Produces individual server and server totals reports.
- ◆ Ability to zero out all unadjusted tips during the batch close process.
- ◆ Ability to adjust a transaction amount to add incidentals like dessert or coffee to the original ticket (may require password for access).
- ◆ Enhanced transaction report includes all debit card details including: food/beverage, cash back, transaction fee, tip and total.
- ◆ Enhanced item detail report to include all debit card transaction details including: food/beverage, tip, cash back, surcharge and total.

Other Software Features

Gratuity Guidelines on Receipt

If tip processing is enabled and the tip is not entered during the sale (blank tip and total line is printed on the customer receipt), two suggested tip amounts can (local option) be printed on the customer receipt as shown in the example below. The suggested tip percents will default to 15% and 20% but can be changed via the local tip options management function.

GRATUITY GUIDELINES

15%=nn.nn 20%=nn.nn

Gift/Loyalty Card Programming

The application allows merchants to process gift and/or loyalty cards through the terminal. The gift card program allows a merchant to activate and process special value added cards that can be used for purchase in the place of business of that merchant only. The loyalty card program also activates and processes value added cards but the loyalty card program measures card value by points, not by dollars like gift cards.

American Express Split Dial Authorization

The application will optionally (host option) support the split dial of American Express sale authorizations to the American Express host. The transactions will be settled to the host as off-line sale transactions. American Express reverse PIP (authorization and settlement to American Express) will not be supported.

Check Processing

The application will process all check authorization to the host; check approval split dial will not be supported. The application will optionally (host option) support the MAGTEK MICR check reader. The check service currently supported through the host is TeleCheck, including TeleCheck ECA.

Address Verification Service (AVS)

Address Verification Service (#PAVS) will verify if the address given by the cardholder actually matches the cardholder billing address when they applied for the credit card. Numerous characteristics of each transaction, including such variables as address and ZIP codes are verified against the billing information of the cardholder when using AVS. Address verification prompts may occur when the account number is manually keyed. Host options include; always prompt for AVS or prompt for AVS according to card type. AVS card type parameters are set by the host.

IMPRINT CARD NOW! Prompt

For transactions where the account number is manually keyed and card present applies, an IMPRINT CARD NOW! prompt will be displayed as a reminder to the operator. The operator must press [ENTER] to continue with the transaction.

Open/Close Tab Processing

Open/close tab processing is supported based on a host option. An open tab transaction may be setup as the default transaction initiated by a swipe at the idle prompt. All open transactions must be closed or deleted before settlement is allowed. Deleted open tab transactions must be sent to the host during settlement.

Automatic Gratuity

An optional automatic gratuity % will be supported (local option) that will force an ADD nn% TIP? prompt. If confirmed, an automatic gratuity will be calculated using the automatic gratuity % and will be added to the transaction amount and printed on the customer receipt. The confirmation of an auto gratuity overrides tip prompting on the sale but the line for adding in a tip on the customer receipt will still apply.

Debit Card Processing

The application will support debit online sale transactions. Auth only transactions, open tab transactions, voids, adjustments, on-line returns, off-line transactions and manually keyed account numbers will be blocked for debit transactions. A printer must be attached before debit transactions are allowed. PIN entry is required for all debit transactions (sales and returns). Both a debit purchase surcharge amount and a debit cash back surcharge amount can apply based on host options. Debit sale transactions must be initiated by pressing the [ATM/DEBIT] key.

Commercial Card Processing

Based on a commercial card indicator in either the card type range table or the authorization response from the host, a customer code (purchase card) and/or sales tax (purchase, business or corporate card) may be requested during the processing of the transaction. For all commercial cards (purchase, corporate and business), the sales tax will be required and if bypassed or zero, a tax exempt status for that transaction must be confirmed. If the merchant is tax exempt (host option), sales tax will not be requested and a tax exempt status will be assumed for all transactions. Commercial card processing can be disabled based on a host option and if disabled, a commercial card will be treated the same as standard credit cards of the same card type.

Transaction Sequence Number

A transaction sequence number is generated for every settlement (capture) transaction. The sequence number will be displayed on the final approval code or accepted screen when the transaction is captured to the settlement batch. A sequence number will not be assigned for auth only transactions. The sequence number starts over at 001 after each successful settlement. When applicable, the sequence number may be used to select a transaction in the batch.

Electronic Commerce Transaction

The terminal can be programmed to process an electronic commerce transaction either automatically or after being prompted. An electronic or e-commerce transaction is an unprocessed transaction from an e-commerce Web site. This feature allows the e-commerce discount rate to be charged when the transaction data is keyed into the terminal.

Card Type Confirmation

When a card is swiped through the card reader or keyed manually, a card type confirmation prompt may be required (typically for debit but not limited to debit card types) based on host setup of the card type range tables. If an account number matches a range with the confirm card type option enabled, a confirmation prompt will be displayed; if the card type confirmation option is not enabled, the card type is automatically selected. If [YES] is pressed at the confirmation prompt, that card type is selected; if [NO] is pressed, a subsequent match will be attempted *for a different card type* and this same card type confirmation logic is repeated until either a card type is selected or a match is found with the card type confirmation option disabled. The card type confirmation prompt is only displayed once for a card type; subsequent card type range searches will ignore any match for that card type.

Transaction Space Management

The application will warn the operator CLOSE SOON (nnn) where nnn is the number of transactions remaining when batch memory is over 80% full before allowing a data capture transaction. Each time a transaction is stored to the batch, the average size of a data base record is recalculated based on the previous average and the size of the new record. At any point, the number of transactions remaining is the size of unused memory divided by the average size of a transaction. The application will display BATCH FULL-CLOSE NOW and abort to the idle state when the batch is full and a data capture operation is attempted. The number of transactions remaining may be viewed at any time in the management function.

Password Protection

The application supports two levels of password protection (none, standard). After a terminal is downloaded, the transactions or functions to require the password are set to either prompt or not prompt for the password via the #PSWD1 download parameter. A standard unique password may be set via the #PSWD0 parameter and must be changed via a Zontalk partial or full download. An override password will be supported when entering the local password setup function (or when the terminal is in LOCK mode) and will be the day of the month squared plus the month. For example, the override password for 9/23 would be $(23 \times 23) + 9 = 538$. The transactions and functions that can be password protected may be activated through a download using the #PSWD1 parameter, or via the Management function via the [#] button on the terminal's keyboard.

Lock Mode

The lock function is used to temporarily disable the terminal until the assigned level password (or higher) is entered.

Demo Mode

Using the local management function, the application may be put into demo mode. *Demo mode cannot be enabled or disabled when there is an open batch.* In demo mode, the terminal will generate demo responses without actually dialing and connecting to the remote host system. When in demo mode, a special demo idle prompt screen will alternate with the standard idle prompt screen as shown below. In demo mode, special demo text will be printed on all reports and receipts. In demo mode, the approval code generated (displayed and printed) will be in the form DEMOnn where nn is the last 2 digits of the sequence number; the settlement response generated will be in the form DEMOn where 'n' is the last digit of the internal settlement ID. In all cases, when a demo response is displayed, the terminal will sound three loud beeps. When simulating an online authorization response, the following simulated authorization response data will apply:

Transaction Amount	Response	Approval Code	AVS Code	Corporate Card Indicator (auth response indicator)
\$1000.00 \$99999.99	- Declined	(na)	(na)	(na)
\$100.00 - \$999.99	Referred	(na)	(na)	(na)
\$50.00 - \$99.99	Approved	DEMOnn	NN	'2' - corporate card
\$00.00 - \$49.99	Approved	DEMOnn	YY	<space> - non-commercial card

Idle Display

The normal idle screen will be SWIPE CARD FOR SALE on the first line and the merchant time and date on the second line. If the terminal is in demo mode, then the first line will alternately flash SWIPE CARD FOR SALE and DEMO MODE. If tip processing (host option) is enabled, an open tab transaction may be setup (host option) as the default transaction and SWIPE CARD FOR TAB will replace SWIPE CARD FOR SALE.

PIN Pad Processing

The application will support the VFI 1000 and 2000 PIN pads, and the LinkPoint BankPoint PIN pad. These devices must be configured for DUKPT key management. The application will support card swipes from a PIN pad 2000 as well as card swipes from the integrated terminal card reader. PIN entry will be *required* for all debit and EBT transactions. Entry of the tip and cash back amount may be allowed from the PIN pad based on set up options.

Printer Processing

The application will support the LinkPoint PrintPoint 1000 dot-matrix and 3000 thermal, the VFI 250/900 (and compatible), the VFI 350 and the DataCard Silent Partner printers (40 column print format only). A download option will enable and disable printing in general (receipts and reports). Up to 2 optional headers and 2 optional footers will be supported for printing on the customer receipt. If a printer error is detected, the terminal will display a printer error message (PRINTER ERROR nn) on the second line of the display for two seconds, sound an error beep and then continue with normal processing. The application will automatically detect when the printer error has been corrected and will no longer display the printer error message. Printing may be temporarily disabled in the local setup function but a subsequent host parameter update (setup) will reset the printing status to the host value.

Thermal Printers

When a thermal printer is attached, a second copy of the customer receipt will be printed but without the signature and promissory note lines. The application will pause between copies for the number of seconds indicated by the PRSEC or until the [ENTER] key is pressed before printing the second copy. If the SECOND RECEIPT TIMER is not 00, the message TEAR NOW, PRESS ENTER will be displayed on the second line of the display and until the timer expires or [ENTER] is pressed. If the SECOND RECEIPT TIMER is 99, the application timer will wait for 99 seconds for the [ENTER] key to be pressed before the timer expires.

Pre-Printing

For online transactions that dial out for authorization, if the option #PREPR pre-print receipt is enabled, the receipt will be pre-printed through the current time and date line.

Masking on Cardholder Receipts

Certain states have enacted legislation prohibiting the printing of the entire account number and expiration date on cardholder receipt copies. In compliance with such requirements, parameters to enable truncation or masking of this information on these copies are available. The parameter #MASKC limits printing of the card number on the cardholder receipt to the last four digits only. The parameter #MASKE eliminates printing of the card's expiration date. The merchant copy prints all information in its entirety. Additionally, the #MASKM parameter is available, which masks all but the last eight digits of the merchant account number.

Calculator Function

Standard LinkPoint 3000 built-in calculator functions will be supported. These functions allow simple arithmetic calculations and can be accessed from the idle menu by pressing the [0] key to begin, then press the numeric keys followed by a key representing a mathematical symbol (÷, x, - or +) and finally ENTER/= to obtain the result.

Full Program Downloads

This process will change to a PS2000/Zontalk/Vericenter download.

The terminal will support dial-up downloads from PS 2000, Zontalk or Vericenter as well as terminal-to-terminal (master-to-slave) downloads. In either download scenario, the application will force host parameter initialization after the full program download completes so that batch memory can be cleared, the correct merchant demographic information loaded into the downloaded terminal and transactions can be restored from an open batch at the host if applicable.

Batch History

The batch history report function will provide information relative to the last nine settled batches including: settle date, internal batch ID, total number of items and the net dollar amount. The batch history review function will only provide information relative to the last settled batch only.

Terminal Initiated Auto Settlement

Terminal initiated auto settlement will be supported for standard retail and mail order/telephone order (but not retail tip and restaurant) based on two parameters supplied via the download: #ACLOSE and #ACTME, auto close enable and auto close time, respectively. An auto settlement attempt will take place at the indicated time if transactions exist and regardless of any intervening operator initiated settlements; if transactions do not exist, auto settlement is not attempted until the next occurrence of the settlement time.

Debit/EBT Auto Reversal

If the phone line or power is disrupted after the transaction settlement has occurred at the host but the terminal has not confirmed that the host has settled (the terminal has not received a host reply), the terminal will automatically resend the reversal transaction. Other transactions will not be allowed to occur until this reversal process has successfully completed.

Boot Mode Functions

The LinkPoint 3000 boot mode allows access to certain operating system, hardware, and diagnostic functions, including: date and time setup, terminal diagnostics, clear memory (application and data), port setup and application download. Application download procedures are covered in detail beginning on page 47. This section explains how to:

1. Set the correct date and time
 2. Use terminal diagnostics
 3. Setup ports
 4. Erase the RAM
- ✓ If the LP3000 displays APP. NOT AVAILABLE on line 1 of the screen and TIME LOAD SETUP on line 2, it is already in boot mode. When in boot mode with an application already loaded, line 1 displays CLEAR TO RESUME, while the display on line 2 is also TIME LOAD SETUP.

Boot Mode Passwords

If an application is already downloaded into the LinkPoint 3000 terminal the procedure to gain access to the boot mode is: *hold down [ALPHA], press [7] [1] [3] [9] and release [ALPHA].*

In the boot mode, if the LinkPoint 3000 terminal prompts for password entry, key in the default password *[4] [6] [5] [1] [0] [7] [0]* and press *[ENTER]*. If the terminal was configured for a unique download password, key in the unique password that can only be obtained from the host Help Desk or the password assigned by the bank/ISO.

Cold Boot

The cold boot feature can be used to clear the terminal's memory (RAM). This feature should always be used under the guidance of a qualified service representative and should only be done to clear a corrupted application or to perform download tests. To access this feature, unplug the terminal's power cord, hold down the [CLEAR] key, plug in the power cord, then release the [CLEAR] key.

Display Message

Enter password:

[π] [π] [π]

CLEAR to cold start
Any other to resume

[π] [π] [π]

LP-3000, 3.x, mm/dd/yy
Select Test Number

[π] [π] [π]

Operator Action

Key in the default password of [4] [6] [5] [1] [0] [7] [0] or the password assigned by the bank/ISO or Help Desk and press [ENTER].

Press the [CLEAR] key to erase the memory (RAM) or any other key to reboot the terminal.

Press the [*] key to reset the terminal to the APP. NOT AVAILABLE display.

Date and Time Setup

To set the correct date and time follow the procedures outlined below.

Display Message

Operator Action

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE JAN-03-99 SUN 10:30P

Hold down the [ALPHA] key and press [7] [1] [3] [9].
Release the [ALPHA] key to enter the boot mode.

[π] [π] [π]

CLEAR to resume Time Load Setup

Press the left [π] key to select TIME.

[π] [π] [π]

01/03/99 10:30:41 Date Time

Press the left [π] key to select DATE.

[π] [π] [π]

Enter Password: _

If prompted, key in the password and press [ENTER].
The unique password may be obtained through the
bank /ISO or Help Desk.

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Enter New Date MM/DD/YY

Key in the correct date and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

01/03/00 10:30:41 Date Time

Press the right [π] key to select TIME.

[π] [π] [π]

Enter New Time HH:MM

Key in the correct time using 24-hour format
(i.e., 3:30p.m.= [1][5][3][0]) and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

01/03/00 11:30:00 Date Time

Press [CLEAR] twice to reboot terminal and return to the
Ready prompt.

[π] [π] [π]

Printer Port Setup

To change the printer port factory defaults follow the steps outlined below. The default settings are compatible for use with most LinkPoint, VeriFone, and Citizen printers. *THERE IS USUALLY NO NEED TO CHANGE THESE SETTINGS.* Standard Default setting: Baud=9600, Parity=Even.

Display Message

Operator Action

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P

Hold down the [ALPHA] key and press [7] [1] [3] [9].
Release the [ALPHA] key to enter the boot mode.

[π] [π] [π]

CLEAR to resume
Time Load Setup

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

[π] [π] [π]

Setup
Ports Model Test

Press the left [π] key to select PORTS.

[π] [π] [π]

Port setup
Printer RS232 Pinpad

Press the left [π] key to select PRINTER.

[π] [π] [π]

Printer setup
Baud Parity

Press the left [π] key to select BAUD to change the printer baud rate.

[π] [π] [π]

Current baud: 9600
1200 2400 9600

Select the correct baud rate. Press the [π] key below your choice to select it and press [CLEAR].

[π] [π] [π]

Printer setup
Baud Parity

Press the right [π] key to select PARITY.

[π] [π] [π]

Display Message

Current parity: Even		
Even	None	Odd
[π]	[π]	[π]

Operator Action

Select the correct parity. Press the [π] key below your choice to select it and press [CLEAR] five times to reboot the terminal.

RS232 Port Setup

To change the RS232 port factory defaults follow the steps outlined below. The default settings are designed to be used for direct RS232 and Master-Slave (POS-to-POS) downloads. Standard Default: Baud=19200, Parity=None. *There is usually no need to change these settings.*

Display Message

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE		
JAN-03-00	MON	12:00P
[π]	[π]	[π]

Operator Action

Hold down the [ALPHA] key and press [7] [1] [3] [9]. Release the [ALPHA] key to enter the boot mode.

CLEAR to resume		
Time	Load	Setup
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

Setup		
Ports	Model	Test
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the left [π] key to select PORTS.

Port setup		
Printer	RS232	Pinpad
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the middle [π] key to select RS232.

RS232 setup		
Baud	Parity	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the left [π] key to select BAUD.

Display Message

Current baud: 19200
1200 2400 9600
[π] [π] [π]

Operator Action

Select the correct baud rate (default is 19200). Press the [#] key to see other options. Press the [π] key below your choice to select it and press [CLEAR].

RS232 setup
Baud Parity
[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select PARITY.

Current parity: None
Even None Odd
[π] [π] [π]

Select the correct parity (default is None). Press the [π] key below your choice to select it and press [CLEAR] five times to reboot the terminal.

PIN pad Port Setup

To change the PIN pad port factory defaults follow the steps outlined below. The standard default settings are: Baud=1200, Parity=Even. *There is usually no need to change these settings.*

Display Message

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P
[π] [π] [π]

Operator Action

Hold down the [ALPHA] key and press [7] [1] [3] [9]. Release the [ALPHA] key to enter the boot mode.

CLEAR to resume
Time Load Setup
[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

Setup
Ports Model Test
[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select PORTS.

Port setup
Printer RS232 Pinpad

Press the right [π] key to select PIN PAD.

[π] [π] [π]

Display Message

Pinpad setup		
Baud	Parity	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Operator Action

Press the left [π] key to select BAUD.

Current baud: 1200		
1200	2400	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Select the correct baud rate (default is 1200). Press the [π] key below your choice to select it and press [CLEAR].

Pinpad setup		
Baud	Parity	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the right [π] key to select PARITY.

Current parity: Even		
Even	None	Odd
[π]	[π]	[π]

Select the correct parity (default is Even). Press the [π] key below your choice to select it and press [CLEAR] five times to reboot the terminal.

Model Number

Follow the procedures outlined below to find out the terminal model (version) of the ROM and RAM.

Display Message

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE		
JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P		
[π]	[π]	[π]

Operator Action

Hold down the [ALPHA] key and press [7] [1] [3] [9].
Release the [ALPHA] key to enter the boot mode.

CLEAR to resume		
Time	Load	Setup
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

Setup		
Ports	Model	Test

Press the middle [π] key to select MODEL.

[π] [π] [π]

Display Message

```
Model 256k
ROM <ver> RAM
[π] [π] [π]
```

Operator Action

Press the left [π] key to select ROM.

```
ROM Version OS XX.XX
[π] [π] [π]
```

Terminal displays ROM version. Press [CLEAR].

```
Model 256k
ROM <ver> RAM
[π] [π] [π]
```

Press the right [π] key to select RAM.

```
RAM Version: XXXX
[π] [π] [π]
```

Terminal displays the application (in RAM) version.
Press [CLEAR] four times to reboot the terminal.

Clear Memory

This irreversible function erases the terminal's memory (RAM) and should only be accessed with the assistance of a qualified service representative. Follow the procedures outlined below to erase the terminal RAM.

WARNING: After erasing the RAM, a full download must be performed to restore the application to the terminal's memory.

Display Message

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P
[π] [π] [π]
```

Operator Action

Hold down the [ALPHA] key and press [7] [1] [3] [9].
Release the [ALPHA] key to enter the boot mode.

```
CLEAR to resume
Time Load Setup
[π] [π] [π]
```

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

Display Message

Setup		
Ports	Model	Test
[π]	[π]	[π]

Operator Action

Press the right [π] key to select TEST.

Test		
Mem Clear	Diags	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the left [π] key to select MEM CLEAR.

Enter password:		
_		
[π]	[π]	[π]

Key in the default password of [4] [6] [5] [1] [0] [7] [0] or the password assigned by the bank/ISO or Help Desk and press [ENTER].

Clear: Are you sure?		
Yes	No	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the left [π] key to select YES and confirm memory clear.

App. not available		
Time	Load	Setup
[π]	[π]	[π]

The memory was successfully cleared.

TERMINAL DIAGNOSTICS

The LinkPoint 3000 diagnostics tests the different hardware components of the terminal. Follow the procedures outlined below to initiate the diagnostics menu. Diagnostics are intended for use primarily by repair depots, technicians and for POS support service centers.

Display Message

Operator Action

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Hold down the [ALPHA] key and press [7] [1] [3] [9].
Release the [ALPHA] key to enter the boot mode.

CLEAR to resume Time Load Setup

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

Setup Ports Model Test

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select TEST.

Test Mem Clear Diags

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select DIAGS.

Enter password: _

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the default password of [4] [6] [5] [1] [0] [7] [0] or the password assigned by the bank/ISO or Help Desk and press [ENTER].

LP-3000, 3.x, mm/dd/yy Select Test Number
--

[π] [π] [π]

At this point, the LinkPoint 3000 terminal prompts the user to choose from the ten tests it can perform. To select a test simply press the appropriate number key.

Display Test—Press [1]

Display Message

Operator Action

```
Display Test
```

Please wait...

[π] [π] [π]

```
0123456789ABCDEFGHIJ  
KLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ{ } ^
```

Please wait...

[π] [π] [π]

```
#####  
#####
```

At this point this you can press [ENTER] to continue the diagnostics testing or press [CLEAR] to exit the testing.

[π] [π] [π]

Keyboard Test— Press [2]

Display Message

Operator Action

```
Keyboard Test  
Left>Right, Top>Bot
```

Press every key starting from the top-left section and working to the bottom-right.

[π] [π] [π]

```
Keyboard Test  
All Keys Are OK!
```

Press [CLEAR] to end keyboard test.

[π] [π] [π]

```
Exit diags?  
Yes No
```

Press the right [π] key to perform another diagnostics test or press the left [π] key to exit diags and return to the boot mode main menu.

[π] [π] [π]

Clock Test— Press [3]

Display Message

Operator Action

```
Clock Test  
12/31/99 23:59:55
```

Please wait five seconds as clock changes to 01/01/00.

[π] [π] [π]
Display Message

Clock Test	
01/01/00	00:00:00

[π] [π] [π]

Operator Action

Press [CLEAR] to end clock test.

Exit diags?	
Yes	No

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to perform another diagnostics test or press the left [π] key to exit diags and return to the boot mode main menu.

Dialer Test— Press [4]

Display Message

Dialer Test	
Pulse	Tone

[π] [π] [π]

Operator Action

Press the left [π] key to select PULSE.

Dialer Test	
Dialing With Pulse	

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait while test is performed.

Dialer Test	
Dialing Complete	

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

Dialer Test	
Pulse	Tone

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select TONE.

Dialer Test	
Dialing With Tone	

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait while test is performed.

Dialer Test	
-------------	--

Please wait...

Dialing Complete
[π] [π] [π]

Display Message

Dialer Test		
Pulse		Tone
[π]	[π]	[π]

Operator Action

Press [CLEAR].

Exit diags?		
Yes		No
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the right [π] key to perform another diagnostics test or press the left [π] key to exit diags and return to the boot mode main menu.

Line Voltage Test— Press [5]

Display Message

Line Voltage Test		
In	Works	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Operator Action

Please wait...

Line Voltage Test		
Line	Free	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Test was successful. Press [CLEAR] to end line voltage testing.

Exit diags?		
Yes		No
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the right [π] key to perform another diagnostics test or press the left [π] key to exit diags and return to the boot mode main menu.

Modem Originate Test— Press [6]

The modem originate and the modem answer tests are interactive. The modem originate test requires dialing another LP 3000 terminal.

Display Message

Operator Action

```
Modem xxxxxxxxxxxx
Enter Tel # To Dial
```

Key in telephone number to dial.

[π] [π] [π]

```
Modem Originate Test
Pulse      Tone
```

Press the right [π] key to test using tone dialing or press the left [π] key to test using pulse dialing.

[π] [π] [π]

```
Modem Originate Test
300  1200  2400
```

Press the proper [π] key to select a modem speed.

[π] [π] [π]

```
Modem Originate Test
Dialing
```

Press the proper [π] key to select a modem speed.

[π] [π] [π]

```
Wait for Carrier
```

Please wait...

[π] [π] [π]

```
MODEM 2400 N, 8, 1
RS-232 9600, N, 8, 1
```

Test was successful. Press [CLEAR] to end modem originate test.

[π] [π] [π]

```
Exit diags?
Yes      No
```

Press the right [π] key to perform another diagnostics test or press the left [π] key to exit diags and return to the boot mode main menu.

[π] [π] [π]

Modem Answer Test— Press [7]

The modem answer and the modem originate tests are interactive. The modem answer test requires receiving a call from another LP 3000 terminal.

Display Message

Operator Action

Modem Answer Test
Wait for Ring

The modem is waiting for a call.

[π] [π] [π]

Modem Answer Test
Connect 1200

When a call is received, the modem tries to connect.

[π] [π] [π]

Modem Answer Test
RS-232 9600, N, 8, 1

Press [CLEAR] to end modem answer test.

[π] [π] [π]

Exit diags?
Yes No

Press the right [π] key to perform another diagnostics test or press the left [π] key to exit diags and return to the boot mode main menu.

[π] [π] [π]

Card Reader Test— Press [8]

Display Message

Operator Action

Clear to Restart		
TK1	TK2	TK1&2
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the left [π] key to test the card reader's ability to read track 1 data.

Swipe Card	S:00	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Swipe card.

%B022727171456^CARD		
Track 2 absent	S:04	
[π]	[π]	[π]

To auto scroll right/left hold down the [#] key or the [*] key or press [CLEAR] to end card reader track 1 testing.

Clear to Restart		
TK1	TK2	TK1&2
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the middle [π] key to test the card reader's ability to read track 2 data.

Display Message

Swipe Card	S:00
------------	------

[π] [π] [π]

Track 1 absent	S:07
;0227271714569-9612	

[π] [π] [π]

Clear to Restart		
TK1	TK2	TK1&2

[π] [π] [π]

Swipe Card	S:00
------------	------

[π] [π] [π]

%B022727171459^CARD
;0227271714569-9612

[π] [π] [π]

Exit diags?		
Yes		No

[π] [π] [π]

Operator Action

Swipe card.

To auto scroll right/left hold down the [#] key or the [*] key or press [CLEAR] to end card reader track 2 testing.

Press the right [π] key to test the card reader's ability to read both track 1 and track 2 data.

Swipe card.

To auto scroll right/left hold down the [#] key or the [*] key or press [CLEAR] twice to end card reader track 1 and 2 testing.

Press the right [π] key to perform another diagnostics test or press the left [π] key to exit diags and return to the boot mode main menu.

Serial Port Test — Press [9]

This test is for engineering use only and requires special port connectors.

Display Message

Operator Action

Serial Port Test
PRN PIN 232

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

PRN PIN 232
OK! OK! OK!

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays status and beeps. Press [CLEAR] to end test.

Exit diags?
Yes No

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to perform another diagnostics test or press the left [π] key to exit diags and return to the boot mode main menu.

Memory Analysis — Press [0]

Display Message

Operator Action

Installed Memory ROM: 128K RAM: 256K [π] [π] [π]
--

Please wait...

Testing ROM LRC's [π] [π] [π]

The terminal begins a ROM (Read Only Memory) analysis.

ROM: 64 128 TEST *** *** [π] [π] [π]
--

ROM: 64 128 TEST OK! OK! [π] [π] [π]
--

Display Message

Testing RAM CRCs

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

RAM: LOW HIGH
TESTCOM1/BANKBANK

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

RAM: LOW HIGH
TEST OK!/OK! OK!

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

LP-3000, 3.x, mm/dd/yy
Select Test Number

[π] [π] [π]

Operator Action

The terminal automatically begins a RAM (Random Access Memory) analysis. This analysis occurs only when no application is downloaded.

Please wait...

Press any number key to resume diags testing.
Press [CLEAR] to exit diags mode.

DOWNLOAD PROCEDURES

There are three methods of downloading the application into the LinkPoint 3000: 1) remotely via telephone, 2) PC-to-POS, and 3) POS-to-POS. Unless an application has been pre-downloaded, the terminal will initially display the message APP. NOT AVAILABLE. If a full or a partial download is selected, the terminal will prompt the user to enter any missing fields (i.e., application ID) and will automatically return to the first empty field. **NOTE:** LP3000 units installed with Operating System 3.2 or higher reflect a different format on line 2 of the display during any download method. Rather than displaying AP-xxxxxxx T-xxxxxxx, it will display the application ID, a comma, followed by the terminal ID being downloaded, i.e. L3CRD31,1234567890.

Telephone Download (No application loaded)

The telephone download requires the use of a remote PC with the software necessary to accept incoming download requests (i.e., Zontalk 2000™). Use the following procedures to setup the LinkPoint 3000 terminal for a modem download. *When the terminal displays APP. NOT AVAILABLE on line 1 of the display, a full download must be initiated.*

Display Message

Operator Action

App. not available		
Time	Load	Setup
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the middle [π] key to select LOAD.

Download			Set port		
[π]	[π]	[π]	[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the right [π] key to select SET PORT.

Select download port		
Modem	RS232	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the left [π] key to select MODEM.

Modem settings		
Baud/par	Dial Mode	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press right [π] to select DIAL MODE.

Select dial mode		
Tone	Pulse	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Select the phone line type. Press the left [π] key to select TONE (standard) or press the right [π] key to select PULSE.

Display Message

```
Tone dial selected
Tone          Pulse
[π] [π] [π]
```

```
Download      Set port
[π] [π] [π]
```

```
Enter phone number
_
[π] [π] [π]
```

```
Enter Appl. ID.
L3CRD31
[π] [π] [π]
```

```
Enter Terminal ID.
[π] [π] [π]
```

```
Modem Download
Full          Partial
[π] [π] [π]
```

```
WAITING ON ENQ...
[π] [π] [π]
```

```
CONNECTED 1200
L3CRD31, XXXXX
[π] [π] [π]
```

```
* -----
L3CRD31, XXXXX
LinkPoint
12/18/02
```

Operator Action

A ...DIAL SELECTED message will display momentarily. Press [CLEAR] twice to return to DOWNLOAD SET PORT prompt.

Press the left [π] key to select DOWNLOAD.

Press [ENTER] to accept the current telephone number or key in the new telephone number and press [ENTER].

Key in the application ID and press [ENTER].

Key in the terminal ID and press [ENTER].

Select the type of download. Press the left [π] key for a full download or press the right [π] key for a partial download.

Please wait...

Please wait...

Please wait, the download time is approximately 12-14 minutes for a full download and 1-2 minutes for a partial

download. After it is completed, the terminal will configure the application. Restaurant/Retail Application

[π] [π] [π]

Display Message

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Operator Action

The terminal is ready for operation when it displays SWIPE CARD FOR SALE and the date and time.

Telephone Download (Shortcut with Application already loaded)

To perform a telephone download using the terminal's default communication settings, follow the steps below. This shortcut method can only be performed when an application has been pre-downloaded into the terminal. This procedure is used to change the application ID or upgrade to a new revision and to perform partial downloads to change parameters or features for a client.

Display Message	Operator Action
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">SWIPE CARD FOR SALE JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Press [ENTER].
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">FUNCTION</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Press [BACKSPACE].
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">Enter password:</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π] <i>(optional)</i></p>	If prompted, key in the password and press [ENTER]. The password may be obtained through the bank/ISO or Help Desk.
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">Enter phone number</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Press [ENTER] to accept the current telephone number or key in the new telephone number and press [ENTER].
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">Enter Appl. ID. L3CRD31</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Press [ENTER] to accept the current application ID or type in the new application ID and press [ENTER].
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">Enter Terminal ID.</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Press [ENTER] to accept the current terminal ID or type in the new terminal ID and press [ENTER].
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">Modem Download Full Partial</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Select the type of download. Press the left [π] key for a full download or press the right [π] key for a partial download.

Display Message

Operator Action

WAITING ON ENQ...

Please wait...

[π] [π] [π]

CONNECTED 1200
L3CRD31 XXXXX

Please wait...

[π] [π] [π]

*-----
L3CRD31 XXXXX

Please wait...the download will last approximately 12-14 minutes for a full download and 1-2 minutes for a partial download. After it is completed, the terminal will configure the application.

[π] [π] [π]

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P

The terminal is ready for operation when it displays SWIPE CARD FOR SALE and the date and time.

[π] [π] [π]

Direct PC-to-POS Download

The direct PC-to-POS download requires the use of a local PC with the software necessary to perform a local download (i.e., Zontalk 2000™). Follow the procedures outlined below to setup the LinkPoint 3000 terminal for a local download. A serial cable with a DB-9 female to the PC male connector and 8-pin DIN male connector to the terminal's RS-232C port, such as VeriFone cable part #00446-04 REV. E, is required.

Display Message

Operator Action

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Hold down the [ALPHA] key while pressing [7] [1] [3] [9] to enter the boot mode.

App. not available Time Load Setup

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select LOAD.

Or, if there is already an application loaded...

CLEAR to resume Time Load Setup

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select LOAD.

Enter password:

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

If prompted, key in the password and press [ENTER]. The password may be obtained through the bank/ISO or Help Desk.

Download Set port

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select SET PORT.

Select download port Modem RS232

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select RS232.

RS232 setup Baud Parity

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select BAUD.

Display Message

Current baud: 19200		
1200	2400	9600
[π]	[π]	[π]

RS232 setup		
Baud	Parity	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Current parity: None		
Even	None	Odd
[π]	[π]	[π]

Download	Set port	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Enter Appl. ID.		
L3CRD31		
[π]	[π]	[π]

Enter Terminal ID.		
[π]	[π]	[π]

Direct Download		
Full	Partial	
[π]	[π]	[π]

WAITING ON ENQ...		
[π]	[π]	[π]

Operator Action

To keep the current baud rate, press [CLEAR]. To choose a different baud rate, press the [#] key to scroll until you see the rate you wish to choose. When you see that rate press the [π] key under the rate then press [CLEAR]. It is recommended that that you choose a rate of 38400.

Press the right [π] key to select PARITY.

Select the correct parity (default is None). Press the [π] key below your choice and press [CLEAR] three times.

Press the left [π] key to select DOWNLOAD.

Key in the application ID and press [ENTER].

Key in the terminal ID and press [ENTER].

Select the type of download. Press the left [π] for a full download or press the right [π] for a partial download.

Please wait...

Display Message

Operator Action

* -----
L3CRD31 XXXXX

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

The terminal is ready for operation when it displays SWIPE CARD FOR SALE and the date and time.

Direct PC-to-POS Download (Shortcut)

To perform a direct PC-to-POS download using the terminal's default settings, follow the steps below. The shortcut method can only be performed when an application has been pre-downloaded into the terminal. A serial cable with a DB-9 female to the PC male connector and 8-pin DIN male connector to the terminal's RS-232C port, such as VeriFone cable part #00446-04 REV. E, is required.

Display Message	Operator Action
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">SWIPE CARD FOR SALE JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Press [ENTER].
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">FUNCTION _____</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Press [BACKSPACE].
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">Enter password:</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π] <i>(optional)</i></p>	If prompted, key in the password and press [ENTER]. The password may be obtained through the bank/ISO or Help Desk.
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">Enter Appl. ID. L3CRD31</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Press [ENTER] to accept the current application ID or type in the new application ID and press [ENTER].
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">Enter Terminal ID.</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Press [ENTER] to accept the current terminal ID or type in the new terminal ID and press [ENTER].
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">Direct Download Full Partial</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Select the type of download. Press the left [π] key for a full download or press the right [π] key for a partial download.
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">WAITING ON ENQ...</div> <p style="text-align: center;">[π] [π] [π]</p>	Please wait...

Display Message

Operator Action

* -----
L3CRD31 XXXXX

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

The terminal is ready for operation when it displays SWIPE CARD FOR SALE and the date and time.

POS-to-POS (Master/Slave Download)

The POS-to-POS download transfers all application code, data, date, time and transaction data from the master terminal to the slave terminal. Therefore, it is important to ensure the integrity of the master device. This includes ensuring that: a) there are no transactions in the master, b) all parameters are the default settings, c) the date/time and hardware settings are correct. To perform a POS-to-POS download connect one end of a standard VeriFone 8-pin DIN back-to-back download cable (p/n 00490-00 REV C) to the master terminal's RS232 port and the opposite end to the RS232 port of the slave terminal. Follow the steps below to setup the master and slave terminals for a POS-to-POS download.

Master Display

Master Action

Slave Display

Slave Action

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Hold down [ALPHA], press [7] [1] [3] [9] and release [ALPHA].

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE JAN-03-00 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Hold down [ALPHA], press [7] [1] [3] [9] and release [ALPHA].

App. not available Time Load Setup

[π] [π] [π]

Press [*] [6].

App. not available Time Load Setup

[π] [π] [π]

Press [#] [6].

Enter Password

[π] [π] [π]

If prompted, key in the password and press [ENTER]. The password may be obtained through the bank/ISO or Help Desk.

Enter Password

[π] [π] [π]

If prompted, key in the password and press [ENTER]. The password may be obtained through the bank/ISO or Help Desk.

BEGIN POS SEND MODE? YES NO

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key.

BEGIN POS RCV MODE? YES NO

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key.

Master Display

Master Action

Slave Display

Slave Action

SEND IN PROGRESS

Please wait...

RECEIVE IN PROGRESS

Please wait...

[π] [π] [π]

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays various screens

SEND COMPLETE

Please wait...

RECEIVE COMPLETE

Please wait...

[π] [π] [π]

[π] [π] [π]

Press [CLEAR] twice to reboot the terminal.

DOWNLOAD PARAMETERS

Download parameters are used for programming or updating a terminal's profile. These parameters may be added or modified through the standard Zontalk Edit Procedures. As mentioned in the previous section, downloads may be performed by three methods: remotely via modem, computer-to-terminal via the RS232 port, or terminal-to-terminal via the RS232 serial port. The following list contains the available parameters (sometimes referred to as memory locations) for the L3CRD31 application. The table is organized into five columns, containing the memory locations, data field type, maximum length and description of the parameter's contents and default settings.

Field Type Codes

N = numeric

Q = question, Y or N

P = phone number field (0-9, A-Z, -, *, #, semicolon, comma, and space)

X = alphanumeric

B = binary (0 = no, 1=yes)

Memory Locations

Parameter	Field Type	Field Length	Description of Field	Default Value	Misc. Information
#1AOPT	Q	1	Amex Split Dial Y or N	N	
#1APPN	P	20	Amex Primary Phone Number		
#1ASPN	P	20	Amex Secondary Phone Number		
#1ATID	X	12	Amex Split Dial Terminal ID	Amex Split Terminal ID	
#1CACA	Q	1	ECA Address line - City+State 'Y'/'N'	N	
#1CACT	X	4	ECA Custom Field Tag	N	
#1CAMI	N	24	ECA Merchant ID	TeleCheck ECA Merchant ID	
#1CAMM	N	4	ECA Custom Field Tag Min and Max Length in NNXX format	0000	
#1CAMP	B	11	ECA Bmp:Id,CB,SlD,CkT,BCN,PrCd,DOB,Nme,Ph,Addr,Cit,Zip,St,IlS,Clr,WPh,Exp	00100000010	

#1CAMT	N	3	ECA Maximum stored transactions in the batch	200	
#1CAPR	X	20	ECA Custom Field Prompt	N	
#1CASA	Q	1	ECA Address line - Street 'Y'/'N'	N	
#1CATI	N	6	ECA Terminal ID	001	
#1COPT	Q	1	Discover Split Dial Y or N	N	
#1CPPN	P	20	Primary Phone Number		
#1CSPN	P	20	Discover Secondary Phone Number		
#1CTID	X	21	Discover Split Dial Terminal ID		
#1DTID	N	12	Gift/Loyalty Card Terminal ID	Gift/Loyalty Terminal ID	
#1DTTP	Q	1	Gift/Loyalty Card Tip Y/[N]	N	
#1ECAE	Q	1	ECA Enable: Y or N	N	
#1KCAL	N	8	TeleCheck Change Amount Limit	200000	
#1KFLP	N	8	TeleCheck Phone Floor Limit	0	
#1KFLR	N	8	TeleCheck Floor Limit Example: 5000=\$50.00	0000	
#1MDID	X	8	Default Terminal ID	Merchant Terminal ID	
#1MECI	N	2	Ecomm 07=Secure 08=Non Secure	07	
#1MMID	N	16	Default Merchant ID	Merchant ID	
#1MNAM	X	20	Default Merchant Name	Merchant Name	
#1MPHN	P	10	Default Merchant Phone Number	Merchant Phone Number	
#1MTAX	X	15	Default Merchant Tax ID Number	Merchant Tax Number	
#1MTYP	X	4	Default Merchant Type Information	Merchant Type	
#1MURL	X	40	Ecomm URL/Email	Merchant URL/Email	
#ACLSE	Q	1	Enable Auto Close: Y or N	N	
#ACTME	N	4	Auto Close Time HHMM (24 hour format)	0130	

#AR01	X	31	Account Range #01 (See next section for details of the account range string convention)	540500.54059 9.16.00.00.04. 101110	Master Card Purchasing Card
#AR02	X	31	Account Range #02	547206.54801 8.16.00.00.03. 100011	Master Card Business/Cor porate Card
#AR03	X	31	Account Range #03	552500.55359 9.16.00.00.03. 100011	Master Card Business/Cor porate Card
#AR04	X	31	Account Range #04	555000.55699 9.16.00.00.04. 101110	Master Card Purchasing Card
#AR05	X	31	Account Range #05	558000.55899 9.16.00.00.03. 100011	Master Card Business/Cor porate Card
#AR06	X	31	Account Range #06	510000.55999 9.16.00.00.03. 100010	Master Card
#AR07	X	31	Account Range #07	400000.49999 9.13.16.00.01. 100010	Visa Card All Types
#AR08	X	31	Account Range #08	340000.34999 9.15.00.00.05. 000000	American Express Card
#AR09	X	31	Account Range #09	370000.37999 9.15.00.00.05. 000001	American Express Purchasing Card
#AR10	X	31	Account Range #10	601100.60119 9.16.00.00.06. 000000	Discover Card
#AR11	X	31	Account Range #11	300000.30599 9.14.00.00.07. 000000	Diners Club, USA Ancillary
#AR12	X	31	Account Range #12	360000.36999 9.14.00.00.07. 000000	Diners Club, Non USA (Including Carte Blanche)
#AR13	X	31	Account Range #13	380000.38999 9.14.00.00.07. 000000	Citicorp's Diners Club (Including Carte Blanche)

#AR14	X	31	Account Range #14	309500.30959 9.14.00.00.07. 000000	Carte Blanche Bin Range
#AR15	X	31	Account Range #15	352800.35899 9.16.00.00.08. 000000	JCB
#AR16	X	31	Account Range #16		Future
#AR17	X	31	Account Range #17		Future
#AR18	X	31	Account Range #18		Future
#AR19	X	31	Account Range #19		Future
#AR20	X	31	Account Range #20		Future
#AR21	X	31	Account Range #21		Future
#AR22	X	31	Account Range #22		Future
#AR23	X	31	Account Range #23		Future
#AR24	X	31	Account Range #24		Future
#AR25	X	30	Account Range #25		Future
#AR26	X	31	Account Range #26		Future
#AR27	X	31	Account Range #27		Future
#AR28	X	31	Account Range #28		Future
#AR29	X	31	Account Range #29		Future
#AR30	X	31	Account Range #30		Future
#AR31	X	31	Account Range #31		Future
#AR32	X	31	Account Range #32		Future
#AR33	X	31	Account Range #33		Future
#AR34	X	30	Account Range #34		Future
#AR35	X	31	Account Range #35		Future
#AR36	X	31	Account Range #36		Future
#AR37	X	31	Account Range #37		Future
#AR38	X	31	Account Range #38		Future
#AR39	X	31	Account Range #39		Future
#AR40	X	31	Account Range #40		Future
#AR41	X	31	Account Range #41		Future
#AR42	X	31	Account Range #42		Future
#ARPT	Q	1	Auto Report at Batch Close: Y or N (Prints Summary Report automatically)	N	
#BBEEP	N	3	Beep seconds interval on close, 0=none	0	
#BHRS	N	3	Max. number of hours	48	

			batch can be open		
#BMAX	N	3	Max. Number of Items in Batch	200	
#BTAB	Q	1	Enable Restaurant Bar Tab: Y or N	N	
#CBMAX	N	5	Maximum Amount for Debit Cash back—decimal entry is disabled and implied. (i.e., following the “\$\$\$¢¢” format, entry of 100 is \$1.00; entry of 20000 is \$200.00.)	00000	
#CBMIN	N	5	Minimum Amount for Debit Cash back—decimal entry is disabled and implied. (i.e., following the “\$\$\$¢¢” format, entry of 100 is \$1.00; entry of 20000 is \$200.00.)	00000	
#CLKDS	Q	1	Daylight/Standard Time auto adjust : Y or N	Y	
#CLOCK	Q	1	12 Hour Format Flag: Y or N	N	
#CNFRM	N	7	Confirm amount prompt if amount is greater	9999999	
#CODE	S	4-10	Unique Seed Value for Download Password ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQR STUVWXYZ0123456789 <i>If a value of less than four characters is entered and saved, NO download password will be set.</i>		
#CPBYP	Q	1	Bypass Card Present Prompt: Y or N	N	
#CPYES	Q	1	Card is Present Default: Y or N	N	
#CSWD	X	8	Card Swipe Default: SALE, AUTH or TICKET	SALE	
#CVV2	X	1	Enable Card Verification Value: Y or N (VISA and MasterCard Only)	N	

#CXEXP	Q	1	Enable Card Expiration Date Check: Y or N	Y	
#DATIP	N	5	Default tip %	20%	
#DAUTH	N	5	Default amt for Bar Tab	5000	
#DBTHS	N	1	Debit host selection: 0=Off 1=On	0	
#DBTIP	N	1	Debit card tip entry 0=PIN pad 1=terminal	0	
#DCBSC	N	5	Surcharge—Debit Cash back (e.g., 50 = .50¢ / 1000 = \$10.00) max \$999.99	00000	Not available
#DCBSC	Q	1	Debit card tip entry 0=PIN pad 1=terminal	1	
#DEBCB	Q	1	Ask for Cash back for Debit: Y or N	N	
#DGTIP	N	5	Auto Tip Percentage Added to Sale 0=none	0	
#DM	Q	1	Enable Direct Marketing Override Y or N	N	
#DPOSC	N	5	Surcharge—Debit Purchase Only (e.g., 50 = .50¢ / 1000 = \$10.00) max \$999.99	00000	Not available
#DRCRE	Q	1	Disable Returns on Credit Card Transactions: Y or N	N	
#DRDEB	Q	1	Disable Returns on Debit Card Transactions: Y or N	Y	
#DWKEY	X	16	Debit working key	000000000000 0000	
#EBTHS	N	1	EBT Enabled 0=No 1=Yes	0	
#ECAAP	P	20	TeleCheck Authorization Only Host Primary Phone	18779508950	
#ECAAS	P	20	TeleCheck Authorization Only Host Secondary Phone	18778157063	
#ECACR	N	3	ECA Chk Reader: 001=Magtek mini MICR 002=Encheck3000 003=Encheck2500	003	
#ECAMS	N	4	TeleCheck ECA Host Modem Speed	1200	
#ECAPA	P	20	TeleCheck ECA Approval	18003662425	

			Questions Phone		
#ECAPD	P	20	TeleCheck Denial Questions Phone	18006979263	
#ECAPP	P	20	TeleCheck ECA Host Primary Phone	187795089500	
#ECASP	P	20	TeleCheck ECA Host Secondary Phone	18778157063	
#ECARF	X	6	TeleCheck ECA Return Check Fee	0000	Set by State Table
#ECBYP	Q	1	Bypass Ecomm Prompt: Y or N	Y	
#ECYES	Q	1	Not Ecomm Transaction Default: Y or N	N	
#EXFSP	Q	1	EBT Offline (voucher clear) FS Purchase Y or N		
#EXFSR	Q	1	EBT Offline (voucher clear) FS Return Y or N		
#FLEX1	X	40	Receipt flex prompt line 1 (below signature line)	I AGREE TO PAY ABOVE AMOUNT ACCORDING	
#FLEX2	X	40	Receipt flex prompt line 2 (below signature line)	TO CARD ISSUER AGREEMENT	
#FLEX3	X	40	Receipt flex prompt line 3 (below signature line)	(MERCHANT AGREEMENT IF RETURN)	
#FREST	Q	1	Enable Restaurant, N=Retail: Y or N	N	
#FSCAS	Q	1	Food Stamp Cash Benefit Allowed Y or N		
#FSPUR	Q	1	Food Stamp Purchase Allowed Y or N		
#H1	X	40	Header line 1	DBA NAME	
#H2	X	40	Header line 2	DBA STREET	
#H3	X	40	Header line 3	DBA CITY, STATE, ZIP	
#H4	X	40	Header line 4	DBA PHONE	
#H5	X	40	Header line 5		
#H6	X	40	Header line 6		
#IDLE1	X	20	Custom Idle Prompt for display line1;this parameter overrides the	DBA NAME up to 20 characters	

			"SWIPE CARD FOR SALE" default display.		
#IDLE2	X	20	Custom Idle Prompt for display line 2; this parameter overrides the date/time prompt; pressing [CLEAR] will allow the user to toggle between the custom line 2 display and the date/time.	Date & Time	
#INV	Q	1	Invoice number enable flag: Y or N (When enabled, this flag serves as an override for all card types to the invoice number option within the account range options)	N	
#KBCLK	Q	1	Keyboard beep: Y or N	Y	
#KBOUT	N	2	Keyboard time out: 0 to 60 seconds (0 = must press CLEAR to return to the idle prompt; 1 – 60 = terminal automatically returns to the idle prompt after the set number of seconds)	60	
#KEYED	Q	1	Disable manual entry of card: Y or N	N	
#L4DIG	Q	1	Last four digit entry flag: Y or N	N	
#MASKC	Q	1	Mask Card on receipt Y or N	Y	
#MASKE	Q	1	Mask Expire Date on receipt Y or N	Y	
#MASKM	Q	1	Mask MID on receipt Y or N	Y	
#MKEY	N	1	Master Key Location for PINPAD	1	
#OPID	Q	1	Operator ID enable flag: Y or N	N	
#PABX	P	12	Prefix required for dialing		
#PAVS	Q	1	Enable Override: Y or N	N	
#PCARD	Q	1	Enable Purchasing Card prompts — When enabled, this flag serves as an override for all card types	N	

			to the Purchasing Card option. It activates Level 2 Purchasing Card prompts: a) Tax and b) Customer Code		
#PCHKR	N	1	# of Check Receipts to print	2	
#PCOPY	Q	1	Prompt for second receipt copy: Y or N (If using a thermal printer, this prompt will be enabled.)	Y	
#PCPNC	P	20	Host Primary Close phone number (If using a SprintNet telephone number, key in the letter "N" {[ALPHA] [-]} following the number, e.g., XXXXXXXN).		
#PDENY	Q	1	Print Denied Transactions: Y or N	N	
#PDIAL	Q	1	Predial: Y or N	Y	
#PDT	X	1	Tone = T Pulse = P	T	
#PNKEY	N	1	Pin Key Management 1=Master, 2=DUKPT, 3=Dual	2	
#PNTYP	N	1	PINPAD type: 1=101/1000, 2=201/2000, 3=BankPoint	3	
#POBYP	Q	1	Bypass Phone Order Prompt: Y or N	N	
#POYES	Q	1	Phone Order is Default: Y or N	N	

#PPNC	P	20	Host Primary phone number (If using a SprintNet telephone number, key in the letter "N" {[ALPHA] [-]} following the number, e.g., XXXXXXXN).		
#PREPR	Q	1	Pre-print receipt: Y or N	Y	
#PRLF	N	1	Printer line feeds	4	
#PRREC	Q	1	Printer enable flag: Y or N	Y	
#PRSEC	N	2	Auto print second receipt (5 seconds) 0=none	5	
#PRTYP	N	1	Printer type: 0=PrintPoint 3000, 1=PrintPoint 1000	0	
#PSUFF	P	12	Dial suffix, if required for dialing		
#PSWD0	X	6	Manager password	123123	
#PSWD1	B	24	Bit map for password protected transactions and functions. 1 for protect, 0 for off (Refer to the Password Protect Setting table describing this map.)	000000000101 001100001110	
#PTAX	Q	1	Sales Tax prompt (separate from Purchasing Card) 0=Use Card Range Setting 1=Enabled 2=Disabled	0	
#RCPMT	Q	1	Prompt for recurring payment: Y or N	N	
#RETRY	N	2	Number of retries to call Host	3	
#RTADJ	Q	1	Enable Retail Tip No Tip Adjust Option	Y	
#RTIP	Q	1	Enable Retail Tip	N	
#SACCT	Q	1	Show swiped account number on display: Y or N	N	
#SATYP	Q	1	Confirm account type on display enable	N	

#SCPNC	P	20	Host Secondary Close phone number (If using a SprintNet telephone number, key in the letter "N" {[ALPHA] [-]} following the number, e.g., XXXXXXXN).		
#SPNC	P	20	Host Secondary phone number (If using a SprintNet telephone number, key in the letter "N" {[ALPHA] [-]} following the number, e.g., XXXXXXXN).		
#STR01	X	6	Prompt input SERVER, OPER, CLERK	CLERK	
#STR02	X	6	Printer output SERVER, OPER, CLERK	CLERK	
#STR03	X	20	Voice approval phone number		
#STR04	X	20	Variable Prompt Str 04	N/A	
#STR05	X	20	Variable Prompt Str 05	N/A	
#T1	X	40	Receipt trailer line 1 (below flex lines)	THANK YOU	
#T2	X	40	Receipt trailer line 2 (below flex lines)	COME AGAIN	
#TAAC	Q	1	Ask for total dollar amount at close	N	
#TDMSP	N	4	Gift/Loyalty Host Modem Speed [1200]	300	
#TDSEC	P	20	Gift Card Secondary Phone	18777103335	300 Baud
#TDTL	P	20	Gift Card Primary Phone	18886632531	300 Baud
#TPGEN	Q	1	Enable tip guideline on receipt Y or N	N	
#TPGP1	N	2	Tip guideline #1 percent	15	
#TPGP2	N	2	Tip guideline #2 percent	20	

Account Range String Description

The L3CRD31 application supports a maximum of 42 account range settings. The available field names range from #AR01 to #AR42. Each field permits the flexibility required for the provider/user to establish low and high account ranges, account number lengths, card type codes and various account level options.

The table below describes each segment of the account range parameter (#ARnn) string.

Example: 000001.099999.00.00.00.00.000000

Segment	Description
000001	Six-digit Low Account Range
.	Separator
099999	Six-digit High Account Range
.	Separator
00	Account number length
.	Separator
00	Account number length
.	Separator
00	Account number length
.	Separator
00	Card type code
.	Separator
0	AVS (Addr and Zip Code) option
0	Direct Marketing w/AVS option
0	Purchasing Card option
0	Invoice number option
0	CVV2
0	Tax input for business or corporate cards

Password Protect Settings

The field name for the manager's password is #PSWD0. The field name #PSWD1 is used to enable a password prompt for the transactions and functions as noted in the table below.

NOTE: Some of the bit map positions when set to "YES", may blanket other settings, therefore the blanketed position may not prompt for password.

#PSWD1: 000000000100100001000 (Where 0=NO 1=YES) the 24 positions correspond to the following 24 transactions or functions:

Position	Password Protects
1	Sale
2	ATM/Debit
3	Offline Sale
4	Returns
5	Authorizations Only
6	Open Tab
7	Close Tab
8	Checks
9	Close Batch
10	Edit
11	Add Tip
12	Void
13	Batch Review
14	Batch Reports
15	Employee Review
16	Employee Reports
17	Reprint
18	Duplicate Transactions (Not Used)
19	Adjust
20	Manual Entry
21	Lock
22	Management
23	Setup
24	Not used (set to 0)

TeleCheck Check Service

The following Zontalk parameters (memory locations) are used when establishing Telecheck (either the authorization only or the ECA check service) using the L3CRD31 application:

Position	Prompt	Default
#ECAPP	Primary TeleCheck ECA phone	1-877-950-8950
#ECASP	Secondary TeleCheck ECA phone	1-877-815-7063
#ECAAP	Primary TeleCheck Authorization Only Phone	18779508950
#ECAAS	Secondary TeleCheck Authorization Only Phone	18778157063
#ECAMS	Modem speed	1200
#ECACR	Check reader code, default [003] eN2500	003
#ECARF	Return check fee, By State	\$00.00
#ECAPD	ECA Denial Questions Phone	18006979263
#ECAPA	ECA Approval Questions Phone	18003662425
#PCHKR	Number of check receipts to print (0, 1, and 2). The first is with signature if needed.	2
#1CACA	ECA Address line – City, State, and ZIP Y/N	N
#1CACT	ECA Custom Field Tag, default cTag (Future Use)	Leave Blank
#1CAMI	Merchant 1 ID assigned by the host	
#1CAMP	ECA Custom Field Tag min and max length in NNXX format (Future Use)	0000
#1CAMM	Prompts Bitmap (see next section)	00100000010
#1CANT	Maximum stored transactions in the batch file up to 999	200
#1CAPR	ECA Custom Field Prompt, no default value (Future Use)	Leave Blank
#1CASA	ECA Address line – Street Y/N	N
#1CATI	Terminal ID for example 001	001
#1ECAE	ECA Enable, default Y	
#1KCAL	ECA Change Amount Limit, example: 200000 = \$2000.00	200000
#1KFLR	TeleCheck Id Floor Limit Amount, example: 5000 = \$50.00	0000
#1KFLP	TeleCheck Phone Floor Limit Amount, example 0 = \$0.00	0

TeleCheck Check Service Prompt Options

#1CAMP: 00000000000 where the eleven positions correspond to the following eleven TeleCheck prompts and options, and are activated when TeleCheck is activated.

Definition: AN=Alphanumeric, N=Numeric

Max Size: Maximum Field Length

ECA/Guarantee Options: Y = Available, N= Not Available

Default Option Setting: 0=Off, 1= On

Position	Prompt	Definition	Max Size	ECA	Guarantee	Default Option Setting
1	Cash Back Amount	N	8	N	Y	0
2	SS#	AN	35	Y	N	0
3	Check Type: Personal or Business	AN	1	Y	Y	1
4	Billing Control #	AN	24	Y	N	0
5	Product Code	N	6	Y	N	0
6	DOB	AN	8	Y	Y	0
7	ZIP	N	9	Y	Y	0
8	Initials	AN	4	Y	N	0
9	Clerk ID	AN	6	Y	N	0
10	Home / Work Phone	N	10	*Y	**Y	0
11	ID Exp. Date	AN	8	N	Y	0

*Home Phone Only

*Home Phone and Work Phone

Gift/Loyalty Card Host Response Messages

Listed below are all the possible gift or loyalty card transaction response messages:

Gift/Loyalty Card Host Response Messages
Approved
BAL = XX.XX (If Insufficient Balance Or For A Balance Inquiry)
Batch Closed
Call Center – IS (Invalid Store)
Call Center – IT (Invalid Terminal ID)
Call Center – IU (Invalid User ID)
Card Out Of Block
Duplicate Card
Duplicate Trans
Expired Card
Invalid Card
Invalid Data
Invalid Retailer
Invalid Store
Invalid Terminal
Invalid User
Min. Amt. 10.00
NSF Fnds
Over Limit
Server Invalid
Zero Balance

Gift/Loyalty Card Modem Speed Setup

The LinkPoint terminal processes credit card transactions at the modem speed programmed in the #TDMSP parameter. The phone numbers provided by the gift/loyalty card provider are set to selected modem speeds of 300 or 1200 bps. Both the primary (#TDTEC) and secondary (#TDSEC) phone numbers used in the gift/loyalty card program must match the modem speed setup in the #TDMSP parameter. Please either see the enclosed chart or contact your gift/loyalty card provider to obtain correct phone numbers for your terminal:

For 300 bps Processing		
#TDTEL	Primary Phone Number	18886632531
#TDSEC	Secondary Phone Number	18777103335
#TDMSP	Gift/Loyalty Modem Speed	300

For 1200 bps Processing		
#TDTEL	Primary Phone Number	18882407968
#TDSEC	Secondary Phone Number	18882407968
#TDMSP	Gift/Loyalty Modem Speed	1200

Split Dial Authorization Option for American Express and Discover Cards

The L3CRD31 application includes an option to permit merchants to obtain authorizations for American Express and Discover cards through those respective hosts directly.

When the split-dial feature is enabled and authorizations are received for American Express or Discover cards, the sale receipts will reflect the authorization codes transmitted to the terminal by those hosts (not from the FDR host). The LinkPoint 3000 will then send captured transactions for deposit during batch closure. The FDR host will then transmit the electronically captured items to the respective hosts. American Express and Discover are then normally responsible for merchant payment. Merchants should contact their respective sales representative or service provider for further details regarding participation in this program.

- ◆ #1AOPT — Amex Split Dial Y or N
- ◆ #1APPN — Amex Primary Phone Number
- ◆ #1ATID — Amex Split Dial Terminal ID

- ◆ #1COPT — Discover Split Dial Y or N
- ◆ #1CPPN — Discover Primary Phone Number
- ◆ #1CTID — Discover Split Dial Terminal ID (This must be obtained directly from Discover/NOVUS.)

SprintNet

In addition to the existing 800 and 950 access phone numbers, the L3CRD31 application also accommodates the use of SprintNet local access numbers. When using SprintNet phone numbers, the required login code N ([ALPHA] [+]) must also be programmed into the phone number fields directly after the phone number itself. The N code must not be placed into the dial prefix or suffix fields. This affects the following parameters:

- ◆ PCPNC — Host Primary Close Phone Number (e.g., 9501324N)
- ◆ PPNC — Host Primary Phone Number (e.g., 9501324N)
- ◆ SCPNC — Host Secondary Close Phone Number (e.g., 18002289074N)
- ◆ SPNC — Host Secondary Phone Number (e.g., 18002289074N)

DIAL STRING CODES

DIAL STRING CODES SPECIFIC TO LP3000

The following table contains a list of codes and their uses for special telephone dialing circumstances. These can be keyed directly into the locations reserved for entering telephone numbers, dial prefixes and suffixes.

CODE	DESCRIPTION	ENTRY POSITION
-	Hyphen: One (1) second pause	Where the pause is required
,	Comma: Two (2) second pause	Where the pause is required
Y	Additional dial tone required	Where dial tone is required
L	Location in dial string to open the dial tone listen window	The point at which the terminal needs to check for tone
M	Indicates the presence of multiple terminals using same phone; must be in dial string of each terminal	Anywhere in dial string
P	Used only when the 'M' code is supplied and there is a dial prefix. When this code is present, the "listening" of sound energy between tone digits is suppressed until the position of the 'P' code is reached. This code is used in the multi-terminal same-line setup where a second dial tone is produced after a dial prefix. If the 'P' code is not used, then the second dial tone will supply enough energy even though it may appear as if a different terminal is dialing.	Where the "listening" is to be enabled
S	A '.2' second pause	Where the pause is required
T	Listens for energy between dialing each digit. This is only used with the 'M' code.	Anywhere in dial string
U	If this character is NOT supplied anywhere in the dial string, then a line status test of 'line busy' will cause a return code of '6' to the application, and a "no-dial-tone" condition will return a '7' to the application. If the 'U' code is supplied in the dial string, then both "line busy" and "no-dial-tone" conditions will return a '6' to the application, and '7' will never be returned to the application.	Anywhere in dial string
V	Suppresses LINE STATUS TEST	Anywhere in dial string
W	Skips dial tone requirement	Anywhere in dial string
X	Slow dial speed: 100 milliseconds on/off	Anywhere in dial string

HOST PARAMETERS AND OPTIONS

Address Verification (#PAVS)

This option enables and disables prompting for the customer ZIP and address code for transactions where the account number is manually keyed and card not present is indicated (see above). Up to five digits of numeric street address information can be entered. Up to nine digits of alphanumeric zip code data can be entered. A two-character address verification code will be printed on receipts and displayed on the terminal. The first character is the address match code and the second is the ZIP match code. The possible character values and their definitions are listed below:

- ◆ Y = Exact match
- ◆ N = Not an exact match
- ◆ X = Service not valid or other error

Adjust Key

This feature is for editing an open tab transaction which is normally accessed when closing the tab by using the [ADJUST] key. The options are: prompt for invoice number, prompt for sequence number or prompt for employee ID number.

AMEX Split Dial (#1AOPT)

This option enables and disables the asynchronous split dial of AMEX authorizations to the Amex host. Approved transactions are captured to the batch and submitted to the default processor host for settlement as off-line transactions.

AMEX Split Dial Terminal ID (#1ATID)

This host option allows the Amex terminal ID to be used in the split dial request to the Amex host and to identify the merchant to the Amex host.

Auto Close (#ACTME)

This option enables and disables auto close at the terminal level.

If AUTO CLOSE is enabled, the terminal will attempt to auto close at the designated hour if there are credit card and ECA transactions to settle. The terminal must be in the idle mode before auto settle can be triggered (the terminal will automatically return to the idle mode based on the local IDLE TIMER value if not zero). If there are no transactions to settle when the auto settle time expires, no further attempts will be made until the next occurrence of the auto settle time. The auto settle should take place at the designated time regardless of the occurrence of any intervening operator initiated settlements.

After a download or parameter refresh, an auto settle will not be performed until the *next* occurrence of the newly loaded auto settle time (regardless of the time and date of the last successful settlement). When an auto settlement is triggered, the terminal will require 60 seconds of inactivity time (keyboard, modem, card reader, PIN pad, ...) before attempting the settlement; during that time the operator can initiate any function to abort the attempt (any activity will be treated as an auto settle error). If ECA is used, the ECA batch will auto close first, upon a successful auto close, the terminal will wait five minutes before the credit card batch auto close process will begin. The terminal will allow up to 10 auto settle errors, before displaying a final auto idle settle error prompt (to remain on the idle display until a key is pressed or card is swiped), printing a settlement error receipt and aborting any further attempts until the next occurrence of the settle time or an intervening operator initiated settlement. The local batch management function will display the auto settle time as well as the last time and date that a batch was successfully settled (regardless of whether the batch was auto settled or whether the operator initiated the settlement).

Auto Print Second Receipt (#PRSEC)

This host option controls the printing of the second receipt if the printing second receipt host option is enabled which is the customer copy for thermal printers. The host options allow the ability set the length of time between when the first receipt completes printing and the second receipt begins to print. The options are:

- ◆ Do not pause between copies
- ◆ Pause for number of seconds indicated (0-99 seconds) or until [ENTER] is pressed

Auto Report at Batch Close (#ARPT)

This option when enabled controls whether the terminal will display the settlement items and the net settlement dollar amount during batch close.

Bypass Card Present Prompt (#CPBYP)

If disabled, a CARD PRESENT? prompt will be displayed for sale transactions where the account number is manually keyed and a YES response will indicate that the card is present and a NO response that the card is not present. If enabled, the prompt will not be displayed and the CARD PRESENT DEFAULT (below) will be used to determine the card present status.

Card Present Default (#CPYES)

If BYPASS CARD PRESENT prompt (above) is enabled and CARD PRESENT DEFAULT is enabled then card present will be assumed; if BYPASS CARD PRESENT prompt is enabled and CARD PRESENT DEFAULT is disabled then card not present will be assumed, If BYPASS CARD PRESENT prompt is disabled, then the card present default will be ignored and the card present status will be determined by the YES/NO response to the card present prompt.

Cardswipe Default (#CSWD)

This option specifies whether swiping the card without pressing a transaction key first defaults to a sale, authorization only, ticket only or tab transaction. The first line of the idle menu will display SWIPE CARD FOR SALE if a sale is the default transaction or SWIPE CARD FOR TAB if open tab is the default transaction.

Confirm Amount (#CNFRM)

This option can be set to any dollar amount. Once the set dollar amount or greater is entered into the terminal during a transaction, that amount has to be re-entered before the transaction will continue.

DBA Name, Address, State and ZIP (#H1-#H6)

The DBA header line information is used for printing a merchant header on all receipts and reports. The DBA information should print only once for any given report. For instance, if the all option is selected for a report (card type, employee ID, etc.), then the DBA should only print once.

Debit Cash Back (#DEBCB)

The debit cash back option enables and disables the prompting for cash back entry for debit sale transactions as defined below. The debit cash back parameters (#CBMIN) and (#CBMAX) specify the minimum and maximum amount that can be accepted the cash back.

Debit Cash Back Surcharge Amount (#DCBSC)

Currently, surcharge on cash back transactions is not supported for debit transactions.

Debit Purchase Surcharge Amount (#DPOSC)

Currently, surcharge on purchase amounts is not supported for debit transactions.

Default Open Tab Amount (#DAUTH)

This is the default amount displayed for an open tab transaction. The operator may override this amount by keying in an amount. If the open tab default amount is zero, an entry prompt will be displayed in place of the confirmation prompt.

Detail On Settlement Report

This option enables and disables printing of the transaction detail (by card type group) on the settlement report. Typically, the settlement grand totals are printed at the top of the report and card type detail (without grand totals) follows if enabled.

Employee ID Totals On Settlement Report

This feature allows printing of the employee ID totals on the settlement report. Typically, the card type detail totals are printed at the top of the report, then the settlement grand totals follow and the employee ID totals follow (if enabled).

Enable Employee ID Text (#STR01-2)

The employee ID text (SERVER, CLERK, ...) is used for the receipt employee ID line and for display text as applicable. In the remainder of this document, *emp* will represent this soft text from the host; for any merchant, the actual text may vary.

Gift/Loyalty Cards

The gift/loyalty card program allows a merchant to activate and process special value added cards that can be used for purchase in the place of business of that merchant only.

TeleCheck ECA Merchant ID Number (#1CAMI)

The merchant number identifies a TeleCheck ECA merchant to all processors. This number is typically printed on the customer receipt.

Merchant ID Number (#1MMID)

The merchant number identifies a merchant to a processor such as VISA, MasterCard, American Express and so on. This number is typically printed on the customer receipt.

Merchant Phone Number (#1MPHN)

The merchant phone number is a 10 alphanumeric character HOST parameter used for MOTO merchants. This field is used for the merchant's customer service phone number and is included within the data packet sent to the host. Also, this phone number may be printed on the VISA statement.

Open Tab (#BTAB)

This option enables and disables open and close tab transactions and associated processing.

PIN Pad Key Management (#PNKEY)

The PIN pad key management type defines the type of PIN encryption indicated in the merchant demographic record. The host only supports DUKPT key management. If the application determines that the PIN pad connected does not match the PIN pad key management type received from the host, a warning message should be attempted with the connected PIN pad device.

PIN Pad Type (#PNTYP)

The PIN pad type defines the type of PIN pad indicated in the merchant demographic record. The host only supports DUKPT key management. If the application determines that the PIN pad connected does not match the PIN pad type received from the host, a warning message should be displayed (each time the PIN pad is used) for 2 seconds and then PIN pad processing should be attempted with the connected PIN pad device.

Printer Type (#PRTYP)

The printer type defines the type of printer indicated in the merchant demographic record.

Receipt Amount Text

The amount text (tip, total, food/beverage/tax) is printed on the merchant and customer receipts when multiple amounts apply.

Receipt Cardholder Name

This feature consists of printing the cardholder name on the line following the signature line if the name can be read from track one (format B only) for swiped transactions. Information found on track one for any format other than B for any other format is unpredictable and should be ignored.

Receipt Invoice Number

The receipt invoice number (INVOICE) is used when printing the invoice number line on the merchant and customer receipt.

Receipt Promissory Footer (#FLEX1-#FLEX3)

This host option enables and disables the printing of the promissory note (I agree to pay...) at the bottom of the customer receipt.

Receipt Trailer Lines (#T1-T2)

This host option enables or disables the printing of text for up to two customized footers on the customer receipt. Each receipt trailer line holds up to 40 characters.

Restaurant/Tip Processing (#FREST)

This option enables and disables processing in restaurant mode. If enabled, all on-line and offline sale, debit and close transactions will allow tip processing.

Sequence Number

The sequence number is used to identify a transaction within the current batch. The host supplies the initial value for the sequence number during the initial startup parameter session. The terminal must increment the sequence number for each transaction submitted to the host (even in error scenarios) or stored off-line to the local batch. The sequence number associated with a transaction must never duplicate that for another capture transaction or a host error condition will result. The sequence number starts over at 00001 after each successful settlement.

TRANSACTIONS

Retail Credit Sale (Non-Debit)

The sale transaction is a credit card or private label card sale transaction that is captured to the terminal batch if approved. The sale transaction is initiated by either swiping a card through the magnetic card reader or by pressing the [SALE] key and entering the account number via the keypad. Auth only, offline sale and debit transactions will be described in detail in the sections that follow for auth only, offline sale and debit transactions.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Swipe card through terminal card reader if the cardswipe default transaction is a sale or press [SALE].

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the password enabled and press [ENTER]. Displays if sale password protection is enabled (#PSWD1).

SALE
ENTER ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

Swipe card at terminal or PIN pad or enter the account number manually. Displays if [SALE] key was pressed.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter password and press [ENTER]. Displays if manually keyed password protection is enabled.

NO SERVICE SALE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and aborts to idle prompt if there is not a non-debit match in the card range table (match is based on the account number swiped/keyed and on the card type range min/max prefix and range min/max length).

ct SALE
TRANSACTION?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm or [NO] to search for another match for a different card type (if none found, abort to idle prompt). Displays if #SATYP (Confirm Account Type) parameter is enabled via download; otherwise process match without confirmation.

BATCH FULL-CLOSE NOW
MUST CLOSE BATCH

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] is pressed. Terminal will return to the idle state/prompt, if the batch is full or if the #BHRS (number hours batch can be open) parameter is enabled via download and the allotted time has been exceeded.

SALE
INVALID ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and returns to idle prompt if the account number check digit is not valid when card is swiped. If card number is entered manually, it will prompt you to re-enter account number.

SALE CLOSE
SOON! (nnn)

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] pressed if the number of stored records exceeds 90% of total capacity.

ct SALE
ENTER LAST 4 DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the last four digits of the card number. Displays if card is swiped and the #L4DIG parameter is enabled via download.

ct SALE
MISMATCHED DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and returns to the previous prompt if the digits keyed in do not match the last 4 digits from the swiped account number.

nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn
IS CARD # CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm account number embossed on card or press [NO] to return to the idle prompt. Displays if card is swiped and the #SACCT (Confirm account number on cardswipe) parameter is enabled via the download.

ct SALE
ENTER EXP DATE-MMY

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the expiration date. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed.

ct SALE
INVALID DATE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to enter expiration date. This is displayed if the date entered is not a valid month/year combination.

ct SALE
EXPIRED CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and returns to idle prompt. This is displayed if the expiration date is expired.

ct SALE
IS CARD PRESENT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if the card is present or [NO] if the card is not present. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed and the bypass card present option is disabled.

ct SALE
RECURRING PAYMENT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if the transaction is a recurring transaction, if not, press [NO].

Enter CVV2
INDICATOR.....

[π] [π] [π]

Either press [1], key-in the CVV2 information located on the card and press [ENTER] or press [0] = Bypass CVV2, [2] = CVV2 Illegible, or [9] = DVV2 Not On Card.

ct SALE
ENTER CVV2 VALUE

[π] [π] [π]

If you chose [1], key in the CVV2 number on the back of the credit card and press [ENTER].

ct SALE
PHONE ORDER?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if the order was received by phone or press [NO] if it was not.

ct SALE
E-COMM TRANSACTION?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if this is an e-commerce transaction or press [NO] if this is not an e-commerce transaction. Prompt appears if #ECBYP parameter is set to N.

ct SALE
IMPRINT CARD NOW!

[π] [π] [π]

Imprint card and press [ENTER]. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed and card present is indicated ([YES] pressed above or CARD PRESENT DEFAULT enabled).

ct SALE
ENTER TOTAL AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the total amount (including tax but not including tip). Displays if more than more than a single amount field applies (TIP PROCESSING enabled).

ct SALE
CONFIRM AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the sale amount again. Displays if Confirm parameter is enabled and the amount is equal to or greater than the confirm amount.

ct SALE
ADD nn% GRATUITY?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to add tip or [NO] to continue. Displays if TIP PROCESSING is enabled and the automatic gratuity is not 00%.

ct SALE
ENTER TIP AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter tip amount. Displays for approvals if enter tip after sale is enabled and the tip has not been previously entered (regardless of automatic gratuity calculation).

TOTAL \$nnnnn.nn
IS THIS CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm or press [NO] to return to 'ENTER BASE AMOUNT'. Displays if more than one amount field applies.

ct SALE
ENTER INVOICE #

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the invoice number. Displays if key invoice number is enabled; otherwise an invoice number is generated automatically.

ct SALE
ENTER ADDRESS

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the cardholder's billing address (code). Displays if the account number was manually keyed, AVS is enabled and the card not present is indicated ([NO] to CARD PRESENT? prompt or CARD PRESENT DEFAULT is disabled).

ct SALE
ENTER ZIP CODE

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the cardholder's billing address zip code. Display is based on same criteria as previous step.

ct SALE
ORDER NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the order number (up to 25 alphanumeric characters) and press [ENTER].

ct SALE
ENTER CUSTOMERCODE

[π] [π] [π]

Either enter the customer code, press [ENTER] to bypass or press [CLEAR] to void the transaction. Displays for approvals if the commercial card indicator on the host response indicates that the card is a purchase card.

ct SALE
ENTER TAX AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the tax amount or press [ENTER] to bypass. Displays if the range level commercial card indicator specifies purchase, business or corporate card and sales tax exempt flag is disabled.

ct SALE
TAX TOO LARGE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to previous prompt if the tax amount entered is greater than the total transaction amount.

ct SALE
TAX EXEMPT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if transaction is tax exempt or press [NO] to return to ENTER TAX AMOUNT. Displays only if zero tax was entered or tax entry was bypassed.

ct SALE
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the employee ID (SERVER, CLERK, ...). Displays if employee ID processing is enabled.

ct SALE
comm status

[π] [π] [π]

Displays comm status (DIALING..., TRANSMITTING..., RECEIVING...) if not a floor limit (capture only) transaction.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
REFERRAL	

[π] [π] [π]

Press [CLEAR] to exit. Displays (beep) if the authorization response code indicates a host referral response. Call the authorization center for voice approval and process an Offline Sale (Ticket Only) to complete the transaction.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
PRINTING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while receipt is printed. Displays if a printer is detected and print receipts is enabled - print error message for non-approved transactions (voids, referrals, declines, time-outs, expired cards, host errors and comm errors).

<i>ct</i>	SALE
PRINTING ERROR	

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (beep) if a printer error is detected.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
TEAR NOW PRESS ENTER	

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached, no printer error is detected and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99 wait 99 seconds).

<i>ct</i>	SALE
TRANSACTION DECLINED	

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (beep) and returns to idle mode if the AUTH RESPONSE CODE indicates declined.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
EXPIRED CARD	

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (beep) and returns to idle mode if the AUTH RESPONSE CODE indicates an expired card.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
AP XXXXXX SEQ nnn	

[π] [π] [π]

Displays if transaction is approved. Aborts to idle mode.

Address Verification Service (AVS) Response Code Definitions			
A	Address Match Only	U	Address Information Not Available
E	Not eligible for AVS	W	9-digit Zip Code OK
N	No Match	X	Exact Match
R	Retry, System Unavailable	Y	Exact Match
S	Service Not Supported	Z	5-digit Zip Code OK
G	International Address Unavailable	B	International Address Match Only*
C	International Address and Postal Code Unavailable*	D	International Exact Match*
I	International Address Unavailable*	M	International Street Address and Postal Code Match*
P	International Postal Code Match Only*		

***NOTE:** Codes only appear on VISA transactions.

Card Verification Value 2 Response Codes	
M	CVV2 Match
N	No CVV2 Match
P	CVV2 Value Not Processed
S	No CVV2 Value Submitted*
U	The issuer is either not VISA certified or did not assign a CVV2 to the card number*
Blank	No data provided in processing response

***NOTE:** Codes only appear on VISA transactions.

Sale Receipt Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
VOID	If voided (bold and centered)
SALE	Transaction type (bold and centered)
	Blank line
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
ct nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type and number
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
<inv text>: nnnnnnnnn emp: nnnn *	If online approved, inv #, emp text/# (if enabled), '**' if adjusted
<inv text>: nnnnnnnnn emp: nnnn AD*	If voice approved, inv #, emp text/# (if enabled), '**' if adjusted
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
AVS Code: X CC Result: X	AVS and CVV2 responses (if enabled)
FOOD/BEV/TAX \$ n.nn	Food, beverage, tax amount, if tip processing enabled: pre-tip amount line (bold)
TIP \$ _____.	Blank tip line, if tip processing enabled: tip amount line (bold)
TOTAL \$ _____.	Blank total line, if tip processing enabled: total amount line (bold)
I AGREE TO PAY ABOVE AMOUNT ACCORDING TO CARD ISSUER AGREEMENT (Merchant Agreement IF Return)	Printed if PROMISSORY FOOTER enabled (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
	Blank line
TRANSACTION DECLINED	If decline response (advance paper and abort)
TRANSACTION REFERRED	If referral response or other error (advance paper and abort)
EXPIRED CARD	If expired card response (advance paper and abort)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
	Blank line
X _____	Signature line (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
<cardholder name>	Card holder name if Format B TRACK I data available and CARDHOLDER NAME is enabled
Thank You	Trailer Line 1
Please Come Again	Trailer Line 2

TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

Restaurant Sale (Dine-In)

The sale transaction is a credit card or private label card sale transaction that is captured to the terminal batch if approved. The sale transaction is initiated by either swiping a card through the magnetic card reader or by pressing the [SALE] key and choosing the Dine option then by entering the account number via the keypad. Auth only, open tab and debit transactions will be described in detail in the sections that follow for auth only, open tab and debit transactions.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Swipe card through terminal card reader if the cardswipe default transaction is a sale or press [SALE].

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the password enabled and press [ENTER]. Displays if sale password protection is enabled (#PSWD1).

DINE TAB
↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select DINE. This displays if the [SALE] key was pressed, the #FREST parameter is enabled and open tab is enabled.

SALE
ENTER ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

Swipe card at terminal or enter the account number manually. Displays if [SALE] key was pressed.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter password enabled and press [ENTER]. Displays if manually keyed password protection is enabled (local option).

SALE
NO SERVICE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and abort to idle prompt if there is no match non-debit match in the card range table (match is based on the account number swiped/keyed and on the card type range min/max prefix and range min/max length).

ct SALE
TRANSACTION?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm or [NO] to search for another match for a different card type (if none found, abort to idle prompt). Displays if #SATYP (Confirm Account Type) parameter is enabled via download; otherwise process match without confirmation.

BATCH FULL-CLOSE NOW
MUST CLOSE BATCH

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] pressed and return to the idle state/prompt, if the batch is full or if the #BHRS (number hours batch can be open) parameter is enabled via download and the allotted time has been exceeded.

SALE
INVALID ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to idle prompt if the account number check digit is not valid when card is swipe. If card is keyed, it will prompt to re-enter account number.

SALE CLOSE
SOON! (nnn)

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] is pressed if the number of stored records exceed 90% of total capacity.

ct SALE
ENTER LAST 4 DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the last four digits of the card number. Displays if card is swiped and the #L4DIG parameter is enabled via download.

ct SALE
MISMATCHED DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and returns to the previous prompt if the digits keyed in do not match the last 4 digits of the swiped account number.

nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn
IS CARD # CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm account number embossed on card or press [NO] to return to the idle prompt. Displays if card is swiped and the #SACCT (Confirm account number on cardswipe) parameter is enabled via the download.

ct SALE
ENTER EXP DATE-MMY

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the expiration date. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed.

ct SALE
INVALID DATE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to enter exp date. This is displayed if the date entered is not a valid month/year combination.

ct SALE
EXPIRED CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and returns to idle prompt. This is displayed if the expiration date is expired.

ct SALE
IMPRINT CARD NOW!

[π] [π] [π]

Imprint card and press [ENTER]. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed.

ct SALE
ENTER BASE AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the base amount (including tax but not including tip). Displays if more than more than a single amount field applies (TIP PROCESSING enabled).

ct SALE
CONFIRM AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the sale amount again. Displays if Confirm parameter is enable and the amount is equal to or greater then the confirm amount.

ct SALE
ADD nn% GRATUITY?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to add tip or [NO] to continue. Displays if TIP PROCESSING enabled and the Automatic Gratuity is not 00%.

ct SALE
ENTER TIP AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter tip amount or press [ENTER] to have the tip line printed on the receipt. Displays if [NO] was pressed in the previous step.

TOTAL \$nnnnn.nn
IS THIS CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm or press [No] to return to RE-ENTER AMOUNT. Displays if more than one amount field applies.

ct SALE
ENTER INVOICE #

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the invoice number. Displays if key invoice number is enabled; otherwise an invoice number is generated automatically.

ct SALE
ENTER ZIP CODE

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the cardholder's billing address zip code. Display is based on same criteria as previous step.

ct SALE
ENTER TAX AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the tax amount or press [ENTER] to bypass. Displays if the range level commercial card indicator specifies purchase, business or corporate card and sales tax exempt flag is disabled.

ct SALE
TAX TOO LARGE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to previous prompt if the tax amount entered is greater than the total transaction amount.

ct SALE
TAX EXEMPT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if transaction is tax exempt or press [NO] to return to ENTER TAX AMOUNT. Displays only if zero tax was entered or tax entry was bypassed.

ct SALE
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the employee ID (SERVER, CLERK, ...). Displays if employee ID processing is enabled.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
<i>comm status</i>	

[π] [π] [π]

Displays comm status (DIALING..., TRANSMITTING..., RECEIVING...) if not a floor limit (capture only) transaction.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
<i>REFERRAL</i>	

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER]. Displays (beep) if the authorization screen response indicates a host referral response. Call the authorization center for voice approval and process a Offline Sale (Ticket Only) to complete the transaction.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
<i>PRINTING...</i>	

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while receipt prints. Displays if a printer is detected and print receipts is enabled - print error message for non-approved transactions (voids, referrals, declines, time-outs, expired cards, host errors and comm errors) appears.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
<i>PRINTING ERROR</i>	

[π] [π] [π]

Displays a printer error is detected.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
<i>TEAR NOW PRESS ENTER</i>	

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached, no printer error is detected and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99 wait 99 seconds).

<i>ct</i>	SALE
<i>TRANSACTION DECLINED</i>	

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (beep) and returns to idle mode if the AUTH RESPONSE CODE indicates declined.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
<i>EXPIRED CARD</i>	

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (beep) and returns to idle mode if the AUTH RESPONSE CODE indicates an expired card.

<i>ct</i>	SALE
<i>AP XXXXXX</i>	<i>SEQ nnn</i>

[π] [π] [π]

Displays if transaction is approved. Aborts to idle if transaction is declined.

Sale Receipt Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
VOID	If voided (bold and centered)
SALE	Transaction type (bold and centered)
	Blank line
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
ct nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type and number
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
<inv text>: nnnnnnnnnn emp: nnnn *	If online approved, inv #, emp text/# (if enabled), '**' if adjusted
<inv text>: nnnnnnnnnn emp: nnnn AD*	If voice approved, inv #, emp text/# (if enabled), '**' if adjusted
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
	CC Result: X
	CVV2 responses (if enabled)
FOOD/BEV/TAX \$ n.nn	Food, beverage, tax amount, if tip processing enabled: pre-tip amount line (bold)
TIP \$ _____.	Blank tip line, if tip processing enabled: tip amount line (bold)
TOTAL \$ _____.	Blank total line, if tip processing enabled: total amount line (bold)
I AGREE TO PAY ABOVE AMOUNT ACCORDING TO CARD ISSUER AGREEMENT (Merchant Agreement IF Return)	Printed if PROMISSORY FOOTER enabled (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
	Blank line
TRANSACTION DECLINED	If decline response (advance paper and abort)
TRANSACTION REFERRED	If referral response or other error (advance paper and abort)
EXPIRED CARD	If expired card response (advance paper and abort)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
	Blank line
X _____	Signature line (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
<cardholder name>	Card holder name if Format B TRACK I data available and CARDHOLDER NAME is enabled

Thank You	Trailer Line 1
Please Come Again	Trailer Line 2
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

ATM/Debit

A debit transaction cannot be initiated along with credit card transactions, but must be initiated by pressing the ATM/DEBIT key. Initiation via the DEBIT key will search for the *first debit* account number match in the card range table (the card type confirmation option is ignored). Manually keyed account numbers are not allowed. Surcharge is currently not supported for debit transactions. Floor limit processing does not apply for debit transactions. Debit returns, debit cash back prompting and printing of the debit signature line may be enabled via host options. Only the last 4 digits of a debit account number (padded with lead X's) will be printed on the customer receipt. PIN entry is required for all debit transactions. The card type service must specify capture. Commercial card processing will be blocked for debit card transactions.

READY FOR SALE

(PIN Pad)

This is displayed during idle state if a BankPoint PIN pad is connected.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
MM/DD/YY DAY 00:00

Press [ATM/DEBIT].

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter password enabled and press [ENTER]. Displays if the ATM/DEBIT password protection is enabled (local option).

[π] [π] [π]

EBT DEBIT

Press the right [π] key for a DEBIT transaction.

[π] [π] [π]

ERROR CHECK PINPAD

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and returns to idle prompt. This is displayed if a PIN pad is not attached.

[π] [π] [π]

DEBIT
PRINTER REQUIRED

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and returns to idle prompt if a printer is not attached (ignore PRINT RECEIPTS option).

[π] [π] [π]

CLOSE SOON!

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] is pressed if the number of stored records exceed 90% of total capacity.

[π] [π] [π]

DEBIT BATCH FULL
CLOSE NOW

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] is pressed and returns to the idle state/prompt, if the batch is full. A batch close must be performed.

DEBIT
NO SERVICE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and aborts to idle prompt if there is no debit match in the card range table (based on the first match of the account number swiped and the card range min/max prefix, the card range min/max length and an associated card type classification that specifies debit).

DEBIT NOT ALLOWED FOR
ct

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and aborts to the idle prompt if card type service indicates no service or auth only.

DB SALE
SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Operator swipes card at terminal.

DB SALE
ENTER AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the total amount. Display if only a single amount field applies (tip processing and cash back entry are disabled). Cash back is not used for restaurant.

DB SALE
ENTER BASE AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the base amount (not including tip or cash back) or if cash back entry is enabled, press [ENTER] to bypass. Displays if more than one amount field applies.

DB SALE
CONFIRM AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Re-enter the amount and press [ENTER]. This only displays if host option #CNFRM confirm dollar amount has been reached or exceeded.

DB SALE
ADD nn% GRATUITY?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to add tip or [NO] to continue. Displays if TIP PROCESSING enabled and the Automatic Gratuity is not 00%.

DB DEBIT
CUST ENTERS CASHBACK

[π] [π] [π]

Wait for the customer to enter the cash back amount, or until customer bypasses CASH BACK entry on the connected BankPoint PIN pad device.

CASH BACK AMOUNT

(PIN Pad)

Customer enters cash back amount or presses [ENTER] to bypass the cash back prompt. This will be displayed on the BankPoint PIN pad if connected.

DB SALE
CUSTOMER ENTERS TIP

[π] [π] [π]

Wait for the customer to enter the tip on the connected PIN pad device or press [ENTER] to go to the ENTER TIP AMOUNT prompt.

ENTER TIP AMOUNT

(PIN Pad)

Customer enters tip amount or presses [ENTER] to bypass tip option. This will be displayed on the BankPoint PIN pad if connected.

TOTAL \$X.XX
IS THIS CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Re-enter the amount and press [ENTER]. This only displays if host option #CNFRM confirm dollar amount has been reached or exceeded.

DB SALE
WAITING FOR PIN...

[π] [π] [π]

This will be displayed on the terminal while waiting for customer to enter their PIN number on PIN pad.

AMOUNT \$X.XX
TYPE IN YOUR PIN

(PIN Pad)

After the total amount is verified to be correct, the customer will be prompted to enter their PIN number. Have the customer enter their PIN number and then press the [ENTER] key located on the BankPoint PIN pad.

DB SALE
ENTER INVOICE

[π] [π] [π]

Key in an INVOICE number and press [ENTER].

DB SALE
ENTER SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Please enter the SERVER ID after the customer enters their PIN number. Press the [ENTER] key when you are finished.

DB SALE
COMM STATUS

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while terminal connects to host. Display comm status (DIALING..., TRANSMITTING..., RECEIVING...).

DB SALE
TRANSACTION DECLINED

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (beep) and returns to idle mode if the auth response code indicates declined.

DB SALE
AP XXXXXX SEQ nnn

[π] [π] [π]

Returns to idle mode.

DB	SALE
PRINTING...	

[π] [π] [π]

DB	SALE
TEAR NOW PRESS ENTER	

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while receipt is printed. The terminal will print a receipt regardless of the printer type and print receipt options. Will also print an error message if not approved.

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached and the second receipt timer is not '00' and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

Debit Sale Receipt Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
ATM/DEBIT	Transaction type (bold and centered)
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
VS nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type and number
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: 1006 SERVER ID: n	Invoice number, employee ID
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
	Blank line
FOOD/BEV/TAX \$ n.nn	Food, beverage, tax amount, if tip processing enabled: pre-tip amount line (bold)
CASH BACK \$ n.nn	Cash back amount (bold)
TIP \$ n.nn	Blank tip line, if tip processing enabled: tip amount line (bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Blank total line, if tip processing enabled: total amount line (bold)
RESPONSE : TRANSACTION DECLINED	If decline response (advance paper and abort)
TRANSACTION REFERRED	If referral response or other error (advance paper and abort)
EXPIRED CARD	If expired card response (advance paper and abort)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
<optional footer 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional footer 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

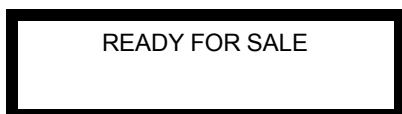
EBT/Debit Electronic Benefits Transfer

An Electronic Benefits Transfer or EBT transaction uses the credit card terminal to process food stamp or cash benefit items electronically using specially programmed debit cards. Like debit card transactions, many EBT transactions require PIN entry to process. Please follow the procedures below to process EBT transactions. Please note that the EBT batch settles automatically, so there is no settlement procedure. Special EBT codes are used during the transaction to determine the type of transaction to be processed.

You must enter the proper two digit transaction type code. The codes are listed below:

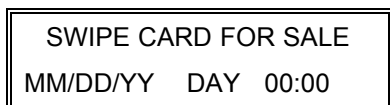
EBT Transaction Type Codes	
Cash Benefit (CB)	
Code	Description
10	Authorization
17	Balance Inquiry
Food Stamp (FS)	
Code	Description
10	Purchase
11	Voucher Clear Purchase
15	Return
16	Voucher Clear Refund
17	Balance Inquiry

EBT Cash Benefit Purchase (Authorization) Code 10, CB Authorization



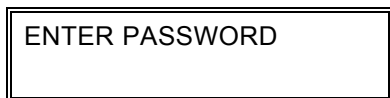
(PIN Pad)

This is displayed at the idle state on a BankPoint pin pad.



[π] [π] [π]

Press [ATM/DEBIT].



[π] [π] [π]

Enter password and press [ENTER].

EBT DEBIT

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to choose EBT.

EBT TRANSACTION
CASH FDSTMP

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to process a cash benefit transaction.

EBT TRANSACTION
ENTER TRANS CODE

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the transaction code [1] [0] for Cash Benefit (CB) authorization and press [ENTER].

EB CB SALE
SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

For CB authorization swipe the EBT card. Manual entry is not available for this cash benefit transaction.

EB CB SALE
ENTER BASE AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the base amount of the transaction and press [ENTER].

EB CB SALE
CUST ENTERS CASHBACK

[π] [π] [π]

Wait for the customer to enter the CASH BACK amount on the PIN pad.

CASH BACK AMOUNT

(PIN Pad)

Customer enters CASH BACK amount and then presses the [ENTER] key on the PIN pad.

TOTAL \$n.nn
IS THIS CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

If the displayed amount is correct, press [ENTER] if not, press [CLEAR] and re-enter the base amount.

EB CB SALE
WAITING FOR PIN

[π] [π] [π]

In a cash benefits transaction, the customer keys in the debit card personal identification number on the PIN pad and presses [ENTER].

AMOUNT \$X.XX
TYPE IN YOUR PIN

(PIN Pad)

After the TOTAL amount is verified to be correct, the customer will be prompted to enter their PIN number. Have the customer enter their PIN number then press the [ENTER] key located on the PIN pad.

EB CB	SALE
ENTER INVOICE #	

[π] [π] [π]

Please enter an invoice number, then press [ENTER].

EB CB	SALE
ENTER CLERK ID	

[π] [π] [π]

Please enter the CLERK ID, then press [ENTER].

DIALING...	
------------	--

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while terminal connects to the host. It will display the communication status (DIALING..., CONNECTED..., RECEIVING...).

DB	SALE
PRINTING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while receipt is printed. The terminal will print a receipt regardless of the printer type and print receipt options. Will also print an error message if not approved.

DB	SALE
TEAR NOW PRESS ENTER	

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to print the second receipt. Displays if thermal printer is attached and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

EB CB	SALE
AP XXXXXXXX	SEQ XXX

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal will display the host reply information, then will return to idle mode.

EBT Cash Benefit Purchase (Authorization) Receipt Sample

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
CASH BENEFIT	Transaction type (bold and centered)
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
EB nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type, number and entry method in parenthesis if keyed
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: 1006	Invoice number
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
RECEIPT NUMBER: nnnnnn	Receipt number
	Blank line
AMOUNT \$ n.nn	Base transaction amount(bold)
CASH BACK \$ n.nn	Cash back amount (if enabled) (bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Total line (bold)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
Cash Benefit Ending Balance = \$nnn.nn	Cash Benefit Ending Balance amount
<THANK YOU >	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<COME AGAIN >	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

EBT Cash Benefit Balance Inquiry: Code 17, CB Balance Inquiry

READY FOR SALE

This is displayed at the idle state on a BankPoint pin pad.

(PIN Pad)

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [ATM/DEBIT].

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter password and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EBT DEBIT
| |

Press the left [π] key to choose EBT.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT TRANSACTION
CASH FDSTMP

Press the left [π] key to process a cash benefit transaction.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT TRANSACTION
ENTER TRANS CODE

Key in the transaction code [1] [7] for Cash Benefit (CB) Balance Inquiry and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB CB SALE
ENTER ACCOUNT #

For CB Balance Inquiry swipe the EBT card or key in the card number.

[π] [π] [π]

TOTAL \$n.nn
IS THIS CORRECT?

If the displayed amount is correct, press [ENTER] if not, press [CLEAR] and re-enter the base amount.

[π] [π] [π]

EB CB SALE
WAITING FOR PIN

In a cash benefits transaction, the customer keys in the debit card personal identification number on the PIN pad and presses [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

AMOUNT \$X.XX
TYPE IN YOUR PIN

(PIN Pad)

After the TOTAL amount is verified to be correct, the customer will be prompted to enter their PIN number. Have the customer enter their PIN number then press the [ENTER] key located on the PIN pad.

EB CB SALE
ENTER INVOICE #

Please enter an invoice number then press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB CB SALE
ENTER EMP ID

Key in the EMP ID and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

DIALING...

Wait while terminal connects to the host. It will display the communication status (DIALING..., CONNECTED..., RECEIVING...).

[π] [π] [π]

EB CB SALE
AP XXXXXXXX SEQ XXX

Terminal will display host reply information, then will return to idle mode.

[π] [π] [π]

DB SALE
PRINTING...

Wait while receipt is printed. The terminal will print a receipt regardless of the printer type and print receipts options. Will also print an error message if not approved.

[π] [π] [π]

DB SALE
TEAR NOW PRESS ENTER

Press [ENTER] to print the second receipt. Displays if thermal printer is attached and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

[π] [π] [π]

EB CB SALE
AP XXXXXXXX SEQ XXX

Terminal will display host reply information, then will return to idle mode.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT Cash Benefit Inquiry Receipt Sample

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
CASH BENEFIT	Transaction type (bold and centered)
INQUIRY	Transaction type (bold and centered)
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<DBA Phone>	If not spaces (centered)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
EB nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn (keyed)	Card type, number and entry method in parenthesis if keyed
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: nnnn	Invoice number
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn	Approval code
RECEIPT NUMBER: nnnnnn	Receipt number
	Blank line
AMOUNT \$ n.nn	Amount (bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Total (bold)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
Cash Benefit Ending Balance = nnnn.nn	Cash Benefit Ending Balance amount
<THANK YOU>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<COME AGAIN>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

EBT Food Stamp Purchase: Code 10

This purchase can only be performed on food stamp transactions, not cash benefit transactions.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ATM/DEBIT].

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter password and press [ENTER].

EBT DEBIT
| |

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to choose EBT.

EBT TRANSACTION
CASH FDSTMP

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to process a food stamp transaction.

EBT TRANSACTION
ENTER TRANS CODE

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the transaction code [1] [0] and press [ENTER].

EB FS SALE
ENTER ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

For a food stamp purchase, either swipe the EBT card or manually enter the EBT card number and press [ENTER].

EB FS SALE
ENTER TOTAL AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the total amount of the transaction and press [ENTER].

TOTAL \$X.XX
IS THIS CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] for YES if the sale amount is correct. Press [BACKSPACE] for NO to re-enter the sale amount.

EB FS SALE
WAITING FOR PIN

[π] [π] [π]

In a food stamp transaction, key in the voucher number on the terminal keypad and press [ENTER].

AMOUNT \$X.XX
TYPE IN YOUR PIN

(PIN Pad)

After the TOTAL amount is verified to be correct, the customer will be prompted to enter their PIN number. Have the customer enter their PIN number then press the [ENTER] key located on the PIN pad.

EB FS SALE
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the emp ID and press [ENTER].

DIALING

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

EB FS SALE
TEARNOW PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

EB FS SALE
AP NNNNNN SEQ NNN

[π] [π] [π]

Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

EBT Food Stamp Purchase Receipt Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
FOOD STAMP BENEFIT	Transaction type (bold and centered)
DBA Name	DBA Name (centered)
DBA Street Address	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA City, State, Zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
DBA Phone	DBA Phone Number (centered)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
EB nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type, number and entry method in parenthesis if keyed
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: nnnn	Invoice number
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
RECEIPT NUMBER: nnnnnn	Receipt Number
	Blank Line
AMOUNT \$ n.nn	Base transaction amount(bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Total line (bold)
	Blank Line
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
	Blank Line
Food Stamp Ending Balance = nnnnn.nn	Food Stamp Ending Balance
THANK YOU	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
COME AGAIN	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

EBT Food Stamp Return: Code 15

This return can only be performed on food stamp transactions, not cash benefit transactions.

READY FOR SALE

This is displayed at idle state on a BankPoint PIN pad.

(PIN Pad)

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [ATM/DEBIT].

[π] [π] [π]

EBT DEBIT
| |

Press the left [π] key to choose EBT.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT TRANSACTION
CASH FDSTMP

Press the right [π] key to process a food stamp transaction.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT TRANSACTION
ENTER TRANS CODE

Key in the transaction code [1] [5] and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS RETURN
SWIPE CARD

For a food stamp refund, either swipe the EBT card or manually enter the EBT card number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS RETURN
RETURN AMOUNT

Key in the return amount of the transaction and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS RETURN
CONFIRM AMOUNT

Re-enter the return amount for confirmation then press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

TOTAL \$n.nn
IS THIS CORRECT?

If the displayed amount is correct, press [ENTER] if not, press [CLEAR] and begin the transaction again.

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS RETURN
WAITING FOR PIN

[π] [π] [π]

In a food stamp transaction, the customer keys in the debit card personal identification number on the PIN pad and presses [ENTER].

AMOUNT \$X.XX
TYPE IN YOUR PIN

Please have the customer enter their PIN number on the PIN pad, then press [ENTER].

EB CB OR FS RETURN
ENTER INVOICE

[π] [π] [π]

Key in an invoice number and press [ENTER].

EB CB OR FS RETURN
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the either the emp ID and press [ENTER].

DIALING

Please wait...

EB FS RETURN
TEARNOW PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

EB FS RETURN
APNNNNNN SEQ NNN

[π] [π] [π]

Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

EBT Food Stamp Return Receipt Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
FOOD STAMP BENEFIT RETURN	Transaction type (bold and centered)
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
DBA PHONE	DBA Phone Number (centered)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
EB nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type, number and entry method in parenthesis if keyed
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: nnnn SERVER ID: n	Invoice number, employee ID
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
	Blank line
BASE AMNT \$ n.nn	Base transaction amount(bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Total line (bold)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
Food Stamp Ending Balance = nnnn.nn	Food Stamp Ending Balance
THANK YOU	If not spaces (centered)
COME AGAIN	If not spaces (centered)
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

EBT Food Stamp Force Purchase (Voucher): Code 11

This force purchase can only be performed on food stamp transactions, not cash benefit transactions. This transaction must be performed after an authorization code for the purchase has been previously obtained.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [ATM/DEBIT].

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter password and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EBT DEBIT
| |

Press the left [π] key to choose EBT.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT TRANSACTION
CASH FDSTMP

Press the right [π] key to process a food stamp transaction.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT TRANSACTION
ENTER TRANS CODE

Key in the transaction code [1] [1] and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS VCLR SALE
ENTER TOTAL ACCOUNT #

For a food stamp force purchase, manually enter the EBT card number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS VCLR SALE
ENTER BASE AMOUNT

Key in the base amount of the transaction and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

TOTAL \$X.XX
IS THIS CORRECT?

Press [ENTER] for YES if the sale amount is correct. Press [BACKSPACE] for NO to re-enter the sale amount.

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS VCLR SALE
ENTER INVOICE

Key in an invoice number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS VCLR SALE
VOUCHER NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

In a food stamp transaction, key in the voucher number on the terminal keypad and press [ENTER].

EB FS VCLR SALE
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the emp ID and press [ENTER].

EB FS VCLR SALE
AUTH CODE

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the previously obtained authorization code on the terminal keypad and press [ENTER].

DIALING

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

EB FS VCLR SALE
TEAR NOW PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

EB FS VCLR SALE
AP NNNNNN SEQ NNN

[π] [π] [π]

Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

EBT Food Stamp Force Purchase Receipt Sample (Voucher)

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
FOOD STAMP BENEFIT	Transaction type (bold and centered)
DBA Name	DBA Name (centered)
DBA street address	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
DBA Phone	DBA Phone, If not spaces (centered)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
EB nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type, number and entry method in parenthesis if keyed
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: nnnn AD	If voice approved, inv #, emp text/# (if enabled), "*" if adjusted
VOUCHER NUMBER.....: nnnnnn	Voucher Number
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
RECEIPT NUMBER: nnnnnn	Receipt Number
	Blank Line
AMOUNT \$ n.nn	Amount(bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Total line (bold)
	Blank Line
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
Food Stamp Ending Balance = nnnn.nn	Food Stamp Ending Balance
THANK YOU	If not spaces (centered)
COME AGAIN	If not spaces (centered)
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

EBT Food Stamp Force Return (Voucher): Code 16

This force return can only be performed on food stamp transactions, not cash benefit transactions. This transaction must be performed after an authorization code for the return has been previously obtained.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [ATM/DEBIT].

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the password and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EBT DEBIT
| |

Press the left [π] key to choose EBT.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT TRANSACTION
CASH FDSTMP

Press the right [π] key to process a food stamp transaction.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT TRANSACTION
ENTER TRANS CODE

Key in the transaction code [1] [6] and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS VCLR RETURN
ENTER ACCOUNT #

For a food stamp force return, manually enter the EBT card number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS VCLR RETURN
ENTER BASE AMOUNT

Key in the base amount of the transaction and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

TOTAL \$n.nn
IS THIS CORRECT?

If the displayed amount is correct, press [ENTER] if not, press [CLEAR] and begin the transaction again.

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS VCLR SALE
ENTER INVOICE

Key in an invoice number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS VCLR SALE
VOUCHER NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

In a food stamp transaction, key in the voucher number on the terminal keypad and press [ENTER].

EB FS VCLR SALE
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the emp ID and press [ENTER].

EB FS VCLR SALE
AUTH CODE

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the previously obtained authorization code on the terminal keypad and press [ENTER].

DIALING

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

EB FS VCLR RETURN
TEAR NOW PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

EB FS VCLR RETURN
AP NNNNNN SEQ NNN

[π] [π] [π]

Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

EBT Food Stamp Force Return Receipt Sample (Voucher)

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
FOOD STAMP BENEFIT	Transaction type (bold and centered)
DBA Name	DBA Name (centered)
DBA Street Address	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA City, State, Zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
DBA Phone	DBA Phone Number (centered)
optional header 2	If not spaces (centered)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
EB nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn (KEYED)	Card type, number and entry method in parenthesis if keyed
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: nnnn SERVER ID: n AD	If voice approved, inv #, emp text/# (if enabled), "*" if adjusted
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence number
RECEIPT NUMBER: nnnnnn	Receipt Number
	Blank Line
AMOUNT \$ n.nn	Amount(bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Total line (bold)
	Blank Line
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
Food Stamp Ending Balance = nnnn.nn	Food Stamp Ending Balance
THANK YOU	If not spaces (centered)
COME AGAIN	If not spaces (centered)
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

EBT Food Stamp Balance Inquiry: Code 17

This transaction is used to check the balance in an existing cash benefit or food stamp account.

READY FOR SALE

This is displayed during idle state on the BankPoint PIN pad.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [ATM/DEBIT].

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter password and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EBT DEBIT
| |

Press the left [π] key to choose EBT.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT TRANSACTION
CASH FDSTMP

Press the right [π] key to process a food stamp transaction.

[π] [π] [π]

EBT TRANSACTION
ENTER TRANS CODE

Key in the transaction code [1] [7] and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

EB CB INQUIRY
SWIPE CARD

For a cash benefit balance inquiry, swipe the EBT card.

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS INQUIRY
ENTER ACCOUNT #

For a food stamp balance inquiry, either swipe the EBT card or manually enter the EBT card number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

TOTAL \$n.nn
IS THIS CORRECT?

If the displayed amount is correct, press [ENTER] if not, press [CLEAR] and begin the transaction again.

[π] [π] [π]

EB FS INQUIRY
WAITING FOR PIN

[π] [π] [π]

In a food stamp transaction, the customer keys in the debit card personal identification number on the PIN pad and presses [ENTER].

AMOUNT \$X.XX
TYPE IN YOUR PIN

Customer enters their PIN number then presses [ENTER] on the PIN pad.

EB CB OR FS INQUIRY
ENTER INVOICE

[π] [π] [π]

Key in an invoice number and press [ENTER].

EB CB OR FS INQUIRY
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the emp ID and press [ENTER].

DIALING

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

EB CB OR FS INQUIRY
TEARNOW PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached and the second report timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second report timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

EB CB OR FS INQUIRY
AP NNNNNN SEQ NNN

[π] [π] [π]

Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

EBT Food Stamp Benefit Inquiry Receipt Sample

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
FOOD STAMP BENEFIT	Transaction type (bold and centered)
INQUIRY	Transaction type (bold and centered)
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<DBA Phone>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
EB nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn (keyed)	Card type, number and entry method in parenthesis if keyed
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: nnnn	Invoice number
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn	Approval code
RECEIPT NUMBER: nnnnnn	Receipt number
	Blank line
AMOUNT \$ n.nn	Amount (bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Total (bold)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
Cash Benefit Ending Balance = nnnn.nn	Cash Benefit Ending Balance amount
<THANK YOU>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<COME AGAIN>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

Gift Card Activate

The gift card program allows a merchant to activate and process special value added cards that can be used for purchase in the place of business of that merchant only. For gift card programming information, please see page 77.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press either the [1] key to access the Gift Card program.

GIFT CARD ACT RDM OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select ACT to activate the Gift Card.

GIFT ACTIVATE SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the card through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

INVALID CARD NUMBER PLEASE TRY AGAIN

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Card number does not meet the Gift Card account range specifications (17-23 digits). Try sliding the card or entering the account number and press the [ENTER] key again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

GIFT ACTIVATE USER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the User ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

GIFT ACTIVATE SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the Server ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number

GIFT ACTIVATE ENTER TOTAL AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the value to be loaded to the Gift Card.
(minimum acceptable amount is \$0.01)

TOTAL	\$0.00
IS THIS CORRECT?	

[π] [π] [π]

If the displayed amount is correct, press [ENTER] if not, press [BACKSPACE] and enter the amount again.

GIFT	ACTIVATE
DIALING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays several communication messages.

GIFT	ACTIVATE
APPROVED	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays the host response message and prints a customer receipt. Tear off receipt and press the [ENTER] key to print the second copy or press the [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

Gift Card Redemption

Use the following procedure to redeem a customer's gift card.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [1] key to access the Gift Card program.

GIFT CARD ACT RDM OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select RDM to redeem the Gift Card.

GIFT REDEEM SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the card through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

INVALID CARD NUMBER PLEASE TRY AGAIN

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Card number does not meet the Gift Card account range specifications (17-23 digits). Try sliding the card or entering the account number and press the [ENTER] key again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

GIFT REDEEM USER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the User ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

GIFT REDEEM SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the Server ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

GIFT REDEEM ENTER AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Key in Gift Card redemption amount and press [ENTER].

GIFT	REDEEM
ENTER TIP AMOUNT	

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If prompted, key in the tip amount and press [ENTER].
NOTE: The total amount (Redeem + Tip) must be greater than \$0.00.

TOTAL	\$0.00
IS THIS CORRECT?	

[π] [π] [π]

If the displayed amount is correct, press [ENTER] if not, press [BACKSPACE] and enter the amount again.

GIFT	REDEEM
DIALING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays several communication messages.

GIFT	REDEEM
APPROVED	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays the host response message and prints a customer receipt. Tear off receipt and press the [ENTER] key to print the second copy or press the [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

Gift Card Reload

The gift card program allows a merchant to activate and process special value added cards that can be used for purchase in the place of business of that merchant only.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [1] key to access the Gift Card program.

GIFT CARD ACT RDM OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

GIFT CARD RLD RTRN OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select RLD to reload the Gift Card.

GIFT RELOAD SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the card through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

INVALID CARD NUMBER PLEASE TRY AGAIN

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Card number does not meet the Gift Card account range specifications (17-23 digits). Try sliding the card or entering the account number and press the [ENTER] key again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

GIFT RELOAD ENTER USER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the User ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

GIFT RELOAD ENTER SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the Server ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

GIFT RELOAD ENTER AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the amount (minimum acceptable amount is \$0.01) be reloaded to the Gift Card and press [ENTER].

TOTAL	\$0.00
IS THIS CORRECT?	

[π] [π] [π]

Either press [ENTER] if the displayed amount is correct or [BACKSPACE] to enter the amount again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

GIFT	RELOAD
DIALING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays several communication messages.

GIFT	RELOAD
APPROVED	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays the host response message and prints a customer receipt. Tear off receipt and press the [ENTER] key to print the second copy or press the [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

Gift Card Return

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [1] key to access the Gift Card program.

GIFT CARD
ACT RDM OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

GIFT CARD
RLD RTRN OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select RTRN to issue a credit return to the Gift Card.

GIFT RETURN
SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the card through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

INVALID CARD NUMBER
PLEASE TRY AGAIN

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

Card number does not meet the Gift Card account range specifications (17-23 digits). Try sliding the card or entering the account number and press the [ENTER] key again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

GIFT RETURN
ENTER USER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the User ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

GIFT RETURN
ENTER SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the Server ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

GIFT RETURN
ENTER AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the amount (minimum acceptable amount is \$0.01) to be loaded back to the Gift Card and press [ENTER].

TOTAL	\$0.00
IS THIS CORRECT?	

[π] [π] [π]

Either press [ENTER] if the displayed amount is correct or [BACKSPACE] to enter the amount again. Press the [CELAR] key to cancel the transaction.

GIFT	RETURN
DIALING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays several communication messages.

GIFT	RETURN
APPROVED	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays the host response message and prints a customer receipt. Tear off receipt and press the [ENTER] key to print the second copy or press the [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

Gift Card Block Activation

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [1] key to access the Gift Card program.

GIFT CARD
ACT RDM OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

GIFT CARD
RLD RTRN OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

GIFT CARD
BLCK BAL OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select BLCK to activate the block of Gift Cards.

GIFT BLOCK
SWIPE FIRST CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the beginning of the block of cards through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

INVALID CARD NUMBER
PLEASE TRY AGAIN

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Card number does not meet the Gift Card account range specifications (17-23 digits). Try sliding the card or entering the account number again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

GIFT BLOCK
SWIPE LAST CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the last of the block of cards through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

GIFT BLOCK
ENTER USER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the user ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

GIFT BLOCK
ENTER SERVER ID

Key in the server ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

[π] [π] [π]

GIFT	BLOCK
ENTER AMOUNT	

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the value to be loaded (minimum acceptable amount is \$0.01) to the entire block of Gift Cards and press [ENTER].

TOTAL	\$0.00
IS THIS CORRECT?	

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] if correct or [BACKSPACE] to enter the amount again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

GIFT	BLOCK
DIALING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays several communication messages.

GIFT	BLOCK
APPROVED	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays the host response message and prints a customer receipt. Tear off receipt and press the [ENTER] key to print the second copy or press the [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

Gift Card Return Receipt Sample

GIFTCARD	
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
BLOCKACTIVATE	Transaction type (bold and centered)
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Gift card program Terminal ID (centered)
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm	Transaction date and time
FIRST: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn SWIPED	Card number and entry method
LAST: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn SWIPED	
USER ID: nnnnnnnn	User ID
SERVER ID: nnnnnnnn	Server ID
AMOUNT \$ 100.00	Transaction amount (if approved)
NEW BAL \$ 100.00	Gift card balance (if approved)
RESP: APPROVED XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	Host response
EXPDATE: MM/DD/YY	Expiration date
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)

Gift Card Balance Inquiry

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [1] key to access the Gift Card program.

GIFT CARD
ACT RDM OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

GIFT CARD
RLD RTRN OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

GIFT CARD
BLCK BAL OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle key to select BAL for the Gift Card balance inquiry.

GIFT BALANCE
SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the card through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

INVALID CARD NUMBER
PLEASE TRY AGAIN

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Card number does not meet the Gift Card account range specifications (17-23 digits). Try sliding the card or entering the account number and press the [ENTER] key again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

GIFT BALANCE
ENTER USER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the user ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

GIFT BALANCE
ENTER SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the server ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

GIFT	BALANCE
DIALING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays several communication messages.

GIFT	BALANCE
BAL =	XXX.XX

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays the Gift Card balance obtained from the host and prints a customer receipt. Press the [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt. Second copy is not required.

Gift Card Summary Report and Batch Clear

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE  
DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [1] key to access the Gift Card program.

```
GIFT CARD  
ACT RDM OTHR
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screens.

```
GIFT CARD  
RLD RTRN OTHR
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

```
GIFT CARD  
BLCK BAL OTHR
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

```
GIFT CARD  
SUMM PRNT OTHR
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select SUMM for the Gift Card summary report.

```
GIFT CARD  
RPT CLR
```

[π] [π] [π]

Either press the left [π] key to select RPT for the Gift Card summary report or press the right [π] key select CLR to clear the summary.

```
GIFT REPORT  
PRINTING...
```

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Terminal prints the daily summary report for the Gift Card transactions.

```
GIFT CLEAR SUMM  
ARE YOU SURE?
```

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Either press [ENTER] to clear the Gift Card summary or press [CLEAR] to cancel the transaction.

GIFT	CLEAR SUMM
SUMMARY CLEARED!	

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

Terminal displays a message confirming the summary has cleared.

Gift Card Balance Receipt Sample

GIFTCARD	
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
SUMMARY REPORT	Transaction type (bold and centered)
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Gift card program Terminal ID (centered)
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm	Transaction date and time
<u>TRANS</u> <u>COUNT</u> <u>TOTAL</u>	Category headings
ACTIVE 10 \$ 100.00	Transaction types, count and total
REDEEM 2 \$ 20.00	
RELOAD 2 \$ 10.00	
RETURN 1 \$ 15.00	
BLOCK 1 \$ 200.00	
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)

Gift Card Reprint

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [1] key to access the Gift Card program.

GIFT CARD
ACT RDM OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

GIFT CARD
RLD RTRN OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

GIFT CARD
BLCK BAL OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

GIFT CARD
SUMM PRNT OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select PRNT to reprint the last Gift Card transaction.

GIFT REPRINT
PRINTING...

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal reprints the last Gift Card transaction processed by the terminal.

Loyalty Card Activate

The loyalty card program allows a merchant to activate and process special value added cards that can be used for purchase in the place of business of that merchant only. The loyalty program measures card value by points, not by dollars like gift cards. For loyalty card programming information, please see page 77.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press either the [2] key to access the Loyalty Card program.

LOYALTY CARD ACT ADD OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select ACT to activate the Loyalty Card.

LOYALTY ACTIVATE SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the card through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

INVALID CARD NUMBER PLEASE TRY AGAIN

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Card number does not meet the Gift Card account range specifications (17-23 digits). Try sliding the card or entering the account number and press the [ENTER] key again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

LOYALTY ACTIVATE USER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the User ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

LOYALTY ACTIVATE SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the Server ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number

LOYALTY ACTIVATE ENTER AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the value to be loaded to the Loyalty Card in dollar format. For instance, 100 points should be entered as \$100.00.

(minimum acceptable amount is \$0.01)

TOTAL	\$0.00
IS THIS CORRECT?	

[π] [π] [π]

If the displayed amount is correct, press [ENTER] if not, press [BACKSPACE] and enter the amount again.

LOYALTY	ACTIVATE
DIALING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays several communication messages.

LOYALTY	ACTIVATE
APPROVED	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays the host response message and prints a customer receipt. Tear off receipt and press the [ENTER] key to print the second copy or press the [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

Loyalty Card Add Points

The loyalty card program allows a merchant to activate and process special value added cards that can be used for purchase in the place of business of that merchant only. The loyalty program measures card value by points, not by dollars like gift cards. To add points, please follow the procedure below.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press either the [2] key to access the Loyalty Card program.

LOYALTY ACT ADD OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select ADD to activate the Loyalty Card.

LOYALTY ADD SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the card through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

INVALID CARD NUMBER PLEASE TRY AGAIN

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Card number does not meet the Loyalty Card account range specifications (17-23 digits). Try sliding the card or entering the account number and press the [ENTER] key again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

LOYALTY ADD USER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the User ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

LOYALTY ADD SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the Server ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number

LOYALTY ADD ENTER TOTAL AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the value to be loaded to the Loyalty Card. (minimum acceptable amount is \$0.01)

TOTAL	\$0.00
IS THIS CORRECT?	

[π] [π] [π]

If the displayed amount is correct, press [ENTER] if not, press [BACKSPACE] and enter the amount again.

LOYALTY	ADD
DIALING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays several communication messages.

LOYALTY	ADD
APPROVED	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays the host response message and prints a customer receipt. Tear off receipt and press the [ENTER] key to print the second copy or press the [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

Loyalty Card Redemption

Use the following procedure to redeem the points of a customer's loyalty card.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press either the [2] key to access the Loyalty Card program.

LOYALTY ACT ADD OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to activate the Loyalty Card.

LOYALTY RDM BAL OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select RDM to redeem the Loyalty Card points.

LOYALTY REDEEM SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the card through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

INVALID CARD NUMBER PLEASE TRY AGAIN

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Card number does not meet the Loyalty Card account range specifications (17-23 digits). Try sliding the card or entering the account number and press the [ENTER] key again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

LOYALTY REDEEM USER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the User ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

LOYALTY REDEEM SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the Server ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number

LOYALTY	REDEEM
ENTER AMOUNT	

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the value to be loaded to the Loyalty Card.
(minimum acceptable amount is \$0.01)

TOTAL	\$0.00
IS THIS CORRECT?	

[π] [π] [π]

If the displayed amount is correct, press [ENTER] if not,
press [BACKSPACE] and enter the amount again.

LOYALTY	REDEEM
DIALING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays several communication messages.

LOYALTY	REDEEM
APPROVED	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays the host response message and prints
a customer receipt. Tear off receipt and press the
[ENTER] key to print the second copy or press the
[CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

Loyalty Card Redeem Receipt Sample

LOYALTY	
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
REDEEM	Transaction type (bold and centered)
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Gift card program Terminal ID (centered)
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm	Transaction date and time
CARD: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn SWIPED	Card number and entry method
USER ID: nnnnnnnnn	User ID
SERVER ID: nnnnnnnnn	Server ID
AMOUNT: 10.00	Transaction amount (if approved)
NEW BAL: 90.00	Loyalty card balance (if approved)
RESP: APPROVEDXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	Host response
EXP DATE: MMDDYY	Expiration date
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)

Loyalty Card Balance Inquiry

Use the following procedure to check the point balance of a customer's loyalty card.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press either the [2] key to access the Loyalty Card program.

LOYALTY ACT ADD OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to activate the Loyalty Card.

LOYALTY RDM BAL OTHR

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select BAL to check the point balance of a Loyalty Card.

LOYALTY BALANCE SWIPE CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the card through the card reader or manually enter the account number and press the [ENTER] key.

INVALID CARD NUMBER PLEASE TRY AGAIN

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

Card number does not meet the Loyalty Card account range specifications (17-23 digits). Try sliding the card or entering the account number and press the [ENTER] key again. Press the [CLEAR] key to cancel the transaction.

LOYALTY BALANCE USER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the User ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number.

LOYALTY BALANCE SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the Server ID number (up to 8 digits) and press [ENTER].

NOTE: Mandatory field – must enter at least a single digit number

LOYALTY	BALANCE
DIALING...	

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays several communication messages.

LOYALTY	BALANCE
BAL=	XX.XX

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal displays the Loyalty Card point balance. Press the [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

Loyalty Card Reprint

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [2] key to access the Gift Card program.

```
LOYALTY
ACT ADD OTHR
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

```
LOYALTY
RDM BAL OTHR
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHR to display additional menu screen.

```
LOYALTY
SUMM PRNT OTHR
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select PRNT to reprint the last Loyalty Card transaction.

```
LOYALTY      REPRINT
PRINTING...
```

[π] [π] [π]

Terminal reprints the last Loyalty Card transaction processed by the terminal. Press the [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

Gift/Loyalty Card Host Response Messages
Approved
BAL = Xx.Xx (If Insufficient Balance Or For A Balance Inquiry)
Batch Closed
Call Center – IS (Invalid Store)
Call Center – IT (Invalid Terminal ID)
Call Center – IU (Invalid User ID)
Card Out Of Block
Duplicate Card
Duplicate Trans
Expired Card
Invalid Card
Invalid Data
Invalid Retailer
Invalid Store
Invalid Terminal
Invalid User
Min. Amt. 10.00
NSF Fnds
Over Limit
Server Invalid
Zero Balance

Off-line Sale

The off-line sale transaction is used to enter a previously approved credit card sale transaction into the current batch.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press [OFFLINE].

OFFLINE BATCH FULL-
CLOSE NOW

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] is pressed and return to the idle state/prompt, if the batch is full.

OFFLINE
MUST AUTHORIZE FIRST

[π] [π] [π]

Swipe card at terminal or enter the account number manually.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter password and press [ENTER]. Displays if manually keyed password protection is enabled (local option).

OFFLINE
ENTER ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

Swipe card at terminal or enter the account number manually.

OFFLINE
NO SERVICE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and abort to idle prompt if there is no non-debit match in the card range table (match is based on the account number swiped/keyed or and on the card type range min/max prefix and range min/max length).

ct OFFLINE
TRANSACTION?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm or [NO] to search for another match for a different card type (if none found, abort to idle prompt). Displays if card type confirmation is enabled; otherwise process match without confirmation.

OFFLINE
NOT ALLOWED FOR *ct*

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and abort to idle prompt if the associated card type service is auth only or if the transaction is a debit transaction.

ct OFFLINE
INVALID ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to idle prompt if the account number check digit is not valid.

ct OFFLINE
ENTER LAST 4 DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the last four digits of the card number. Displays if card is swiped and the card swipe verification indicates enter last 4 digits of the account number for confirmation.

ct OFFLINE
MISMATCHED DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (with the digits keyed 'nnnn') for 2 seconds (beep) and return to the previous prompt if the digits keyed do not match the last 4 digits from the swiped account number.

nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn
IS CARD # CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to confirm account number embossed on card or press [NO] to return to the idle prompt. Displays if card is swiped and the card swipe verification indicates display track data for confirmation.

ct OFFLINE
ENTER EXP DATE-MMYY

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the expiration date. *This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed.*

ct OFFLINE
INVALID DATE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to ENTER EXP DATE prompt. This is displayed if the date entered is not a valid month/year combination.

ct OFFLINE
EXPIRED CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to idle prompt. This is displayed if expiration date is expired.

ct OFFLINE
IS CARD PRESENT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] if the card is present or [NO] if the card is not present. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed and the bypass card present option is disabled.

ct OFFLINE
RECURRING PAYMENT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if the transaction is a recurring transaction, if not, press [NO].

ct OFFLINE
PHONE ORDER?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if the order was received by phone or press [NO] if it was not.

ct OFFLINE
E-COMM TRANSACTION?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if this is an e-commerce transaction or press [NO] if this is not an e-commerce transaction. Prompt appears if #ECBYP parameter is set to N.

ct OFFLINE
IMPRINT CARD NOW!

[π] [π] [π]

Imprint card and press [ENTER]. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed and card present is indicated ([YES] pressed above or CARD PRESENT DEFAULT enabled).

ct OFFLINE
ENTER TOTAL AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the total amount (including tax but not including tip). Displays if more than more than a single amount field applies (TIP PROCESSING enabled).

ct OFFLINE
CONFIRM AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the sale amount again. Displays if Confirm parameter is enabled and the amount is equal to or greater than the confirm amount.

ct OFFLINE
ADD nn% GRATUITY?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to add tip or [NO] to continue. Displays if TIP PROCESSING is enabled and the automatic gratuity is not 00%.

ct OFFLINE
ENTER TIP AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter tip amount. Displays for approvals if enter tip after sale is enabled and the tip has not been previously entered (regardless of automatic gratuity calculation).

TOTAL \$nnnnn.nn
IS THIS CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm or press [NO] to return to 'ENTER BASE AMOUNT'. Displays if more than one amount field applies.

ct OFFLINE
ENTER INVOICE #

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the invoice number. Displays if key invoice number is enabled; otherwise an invoice number is generated automatically.

ct OFFLINE
ORDER NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the order number (up to 25 alphanumeric characters) and press [ENTER].

ct OFFLINE
ENTER CUSTOMERCODE

[π] [π] [π]

Either enter the customer code, press [ENTER] to bypass or press [CLEAR] to void the transaction. Displays for approvals if the commercial card indicator on the host response indicates that the card is a purchase card.

ct OFFLINE
ENTER TAX AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the tax amount or press [ENTER] to bypass. Displays if the range level commercial card indicator specifies purchase, business or corporate card and sales tax exempt flag is disabled.

ct OFFLINE
TAX TOO LARGE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to previous prompt if the tax amount entered is greater than the total transaction amount.

ct OFFLINE
TAX EXEMPT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if transaction is tax exempt or press [NO] to return to ENTER TAX AMOUNT. Displays only if zero tax was entered or tax entry was bypassed.

ct OFFLINE
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the employee ID (SERVER, CLERK, ...). Displays if employee ID processing is enabled.

ct OFFLINE
AUTH CODE

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the approval code from the original transaction or voice approval.

ct OFFLINE
PRINTING...

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while receipt is printed. Displays if a printer is attached and receipt printing is enabled.

ct OFFLINE
TEAR NOW PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds...).

ct OFFLINE
ACCEPTED SEQ nnn

[π] [π] [π]

Abort to idle leaving display.

Off-line Sale Receipt Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
OFFLINE SALE	Transaction type (bold and centered)
	Blank line
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
VS nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type and number
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: 1006 SERVER ID: n	Invoice number, employee ID
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
FOOD/BEV/TAX \$ n.nn	Food, beverage, tax amount, if tip processing enabled: pre-tip amount line (bold)
TIP \$ _____.	Blank tip line, if tip processing enabled: tip amount line (bold)
TOTAL \$ _____.	Blank total line, if tip processing enabled: total amount line (bold)
I AGREE TO PAY ABOVE TOTAL AMOUNT ACCORDING TO MERCHANT AGREEMENT	Printed if PROMISSORY FOOTER enabled (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
	Blank line
TRANSACTION DECLINED	If decline response (advance paper and abort)
TRANSACTION REFERRED	If referral response or other error (advance paper and abort)
EXPIRED CARD	If expired card response (advance paper and abort)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
	Blank line
X _____	Signature line (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
<cardholder name>	Card holder name if Format B TRACK I data available and CARDHOLDER NAME is enabled
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

Return (Credit)

Return is an off-line transaction used to issue a credit or refund for a credit card transaction only. Debit return is currently not available.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press [RETURN].

RETURN BATCH
FULL CLOSE NOW

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] is pressed and return to the idle state/prompt, if the batch is full.

OPTION DISABLED

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and abort to idle prompt if RETURNS are disabled.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter password. Displays if return password protection is enabled (local option).

CREDIT DEBIT

[π] [π] [π]

For credit press the left [π] green arrow key.

RETURN
ENTER ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

Swipe card or enter the account number manually.

NO SERVICE RETURN

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and abort to idle prompt if there is no non-debit match in the card range table (match is based on the account number swiped/keyed and on the card type range min/max prefix, range min/max length).

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter manual entry level password and press [ENTER]. Displays if manually keyed password protection is enabled.

ct RETURN
ct TRANSACTION?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm or [NO] to search for another match for a *different* card type (if none found, abort to idle prompt). Displays if card type confirmation is enabled; otherwise process match without confirmation.

ct RETURN
ENTER EXP DATE-MMY

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the expiration date.

ct RETURN
INVALID DATE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to ENTER EXP DATE prompt. This is displayed if the date entered is not a valid month/year combination.

RETURN
INVALID ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to idle prompt if the account number check digit is not valid for credit card transactions.

RETURN
NOT ALLOWED FOR ct

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and abort to idle prompt if the associated card type service does not indicate capture or if a debit transaction and debit returns are disabled.

ct RETURN
ENTER LAST 4 DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Swiped entry only:

Enter the last four digits of the card number. Displays if card is swiped and the card swipe verification indicates enter last four digits of the account number for confirmation.

ct RETURN
MISMATCHED DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Swiped entry only:

Displays (with the digits keyed 'nnnn') for 2 seconds (beep) and return to the previous prompt if the digits keyed do not match the last four digits from the swiped account number.

nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn
IS CARD # CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to confirm account number embossed on card or press [NO] to return to the idle prompt. Displays if card is swiped and the card swipe verification indicates display track data for confirmation.

ct RETURN
IS CARD PRESENT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] if the card is present or [NO] if the card is not present. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed and the bypass card present option is disabled.

ct RETURN
IMPRINT CARD NOW!

[π] [π] [π]

Manual entry only:

Imprint card and press [ENTER]. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed and card present is indicated ([YES] pressed above or card present default enabled).

ct RETURN
RETURN AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the base amount (pre-tip). Displays if more than one amount field applies.

TOTAL \$nnnnn.nn
IS THIS CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm or press [NO] to return to enter base amount. Displays if more than one amount field applies.

ct RETURN
ENTER CUSTOMER CODE

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the customer code or press [ENTER] to bypass. Displays if the range level commercial card indicator specifies purchase card.

ct RETURN
ENTER TAX AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the tax amount or press [ENTER] to bypass. Displays if the range level commercial card indicator specifies purchase, business, corporate card or unknown and SALES tax exempt flag is disabled.

ct RETURN
TAX TOO LARGE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to previous prompt if the tax amount entered is greater than the transaction amount or, if multiple amount fields apply, the base amount.

ct RETURN
TAX EXEMPT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if transaction is tax exempt or press [NO] to return to enter tax amount. Displays only if zero tax was entered or tax entry was bypassed in previous step.

ct RETURN
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the employee (SERVER, CLERK, ...) ID. Displays if employee ID processing is enabled.

ct RETURN
ACCEPTED SEQ nnn

[π] [π] [π]

Transaction accepted.

ct RETURN
PRINTING...

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while receipt is printed. Displays if a printer is attached and receipt printing is enabled.

ct RETURN
TEAR NOW PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

ct RETURN
ACCEPTED SEQ nnn

[π] [π] [π]

Return to idle leaving display.

Return Receipt Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
RETURN	Transaction type (bold and centered)
	Blank line
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
VS nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type and number
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: 1007 SERVER ID: n	Invoice number, employee ID
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
FOOD/BEV/TAX/TIP \$ n.nn	Food, beverage, tax amount, if tip processing enabled: pre-tip amount line (bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Blank total line, if tip processing enabled: total amount line (bold)
	Blank line
I AGREE TO PAY ABOVE TOTAL AMOUNT ACCORDING TO MERCHANT AGREEMENT	Printed if PROMISSORY FOOTER enabled (omitted on thermal printer receipts 2nd copy)
	Blank line
TRANSACTION DECLINED	If decline response (advance paper and abort)
TRANSACTION REFERRED	If referral response or other error (advance paper and abort)
EXPIRED CARD	If expired card response (advance paper and abort)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
	Blank line
X _____	Signature line (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
<cardholder name>	Card holder name if Format B TRACK I data available and CARDHOLDER NAME is enabled
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

Authorization Only (Auth Only)

The authorization only function is used to process an authorization only transaction without capturing the transaction to the open batch. Transactions associated with either a capture CARD TYPE SERVICE or auth only CARD TYPE SERVICE can be processed in this function but all will be treated as auth only. The CARD TYPE FLOOR LIMIT should be ignored for auth only transactions.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
ONLY mmm-dd-yy ddd
hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Swipe card through terminal card reader if the cardswipe default transaction is a AUTH ONLY or press the [AUTH ONLY] key.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the password and press [ENTER]. Displays if AUTH ONLY password protection is enabled (#PSWD1).

AUTH ONLY
ENTER ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

Swipe card at terminal or PIN pad or enter the account number manually. Displays if [AUTH ONLY] key was pressed.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter manual entry level password. Displays if manually keyed password protection is enabled. (local option)

AUTH ONLY
NO SERVICE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and aborts to idle prompt if there is not a non-debit match in the card range table (match is based on the account number swiped/keyed and on the card type range min/max prefix and range min/max length).

ct AUTH ONLY
TRANSACTION?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm or [NO] to search for another match for a different card type (if none found, abort to idle prompt). Displays if #SATYP (Confirm Account Type) parameter is enabled via download; otherwise process match without confirmation.

BATCH FULL-CLOSE NOW
MUST CLOSE BATCH

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] is pressed. Terminal will return to the idle state/prompt, if the batch is full or if the #BHRS (number hours batch can be open) parameter is enabled via download and the allotted time has been exceeded.

AUTH ONLY
INVALID ACCOUNT #

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and returns to idle prompt if the account number check digit is not valid when card is swiped. If card number is entered manually, it will prompt you to re-enter account number.

AUTH ONLY
CLOSE SOON! (nnn)

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] pressed if the number of stored records exceeds 90% of total capacity.

ct AUTH ONLY
ENTER LAST 4 DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the last four digits of the card number. Displays if card is swiped and the #L4DIG parameter is enabled via download.

ct AUTH ONLY
MISMATCHED DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and returns to the previous prompt if the digits keyed in do not match the last 4 digits from the swiped account number.

nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn
IS CARD # CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm account number embossed on card or press [NO] to return to the idle prompt. Displays if card is swiped and the #SACCT (Confirm account number on cardswipe) parameter is enabled via the download.

ct AUTH ONLY
ENTER EXP DATE-MMY

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the expiration date. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed.

ct AUTH ONLY
INVALID DATE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to enter expiration date. This is displayed if the date entered is not a valid month/year combination.

ct AUTH ONLY
EXPIRED CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and returns to idle prompt. This is displayed if the expiration date is expired.

ct AUTH ONLY
IS CARD PRESENT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if the card is present or [NO] if the card is not present. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed and the bypass card present option is disabled.

ct AUTH ONLY
RECURRING PAYMENT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if the transaction is a recurring transaction, if not, press [NO].

Enter CVV2
INDICATOR.....

[π] [π] [π]

Either press [1], key-in the CVV2 information located on the card and press [ENTER] or press [0] = Bypass CVV2, [2] = CVV2 Illegible, or [9] = DVV2 Not On Card.

ct AUTH ONLY
ENTER CVV2 VALUE

[π] [π] [π]

If you chose [1], key in the CVV2 number on the back of the credit card and press [ENTER].

ct AUTH ONLY
PHONE ORDER?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if the order was received by phone or press [NO] if it was not.

ct AUTH ONLY
E-COMM TRANSACTION?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] if this is an e-commerce transaction or press [NO] if this is not an e-commerce transaction. Prompt appears if #ECBYP parameter is set to N.

ct AUTH ONLY
IMPRINT CARD NOW!

[π] [π] [π]

Imprint card and press [ENTER]. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed and card present is indicated ([YES] pressed above or CARD PRESENT DEFAULT enabled).

ct AUTH ONLY
ENTER TOTAL AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the total amount.

ct AUTH ONLY
ENTER BASE AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the base amount (including tax but not including tip). Displays if more than more than a single amount field applies (TIP PROCESSING enabled).

ct AUTH ONLY
CONFIRM AMOUNT

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the sale amount again. Displays if Confirm parameter is enabled and the amount is equal to or greater than the confirm amount.

TOTAL \$nnnnn.nn
IS THIS CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to confirm or press [NO] to return to 'ENTER BASE AMOUNT'. Displays if more than one amount field applies.

ct AUTH ONLY
ENTER INVOICE #

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the invoice number. Displays if key invoice number is enabled; otherwise an invoice number is generated automatically.

ct AUTH ONLY
ENTER ADDRESS

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the cardholder's billing address (code). Displays if the account number was manually keyed, AVS is enabled and the card not present is indicated ([NO] to CARD PRESENT? prompt or CARD PRESENT DEFAULT is disabled).

ct AUTH ONLY
ENTER ZIP CODE

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the cardholder's billing address zip code. Display is based on same criteria as previous step.

ct AUTH ONLY
ORDER NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the order number (up to 25 alphanumeric characters) and press [ENTER].

ct AUTH ONLY
ENTER CUSTOMERCODE

[π] [π] [π]

Either enter the customer code, press [ENTER] to bypass or press [CLEAR] to void the transaction. Displays for approvals if the commercial card indicator on the host response indicates that the card is a purchase card.

ct AUTH ONLY
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the employee ID (SERVER, CLERK, ...). Displays if employee ID processing is enabled.

ct AUTH ONLY
comm status

[π] [π] [π]

Displays comm status (DIALING..., TRANSMITTING..., RECEIVING...).

ct AUTH ONLY
REFERRAL

[π] [π] [π]

Press [CLEAR] to return to idle prompt. Displays (beep) if the authorization response code indicates a host referral response. Call the authorization center for voice approval and process an Offline AUTH ONLY (Ticket Only) to complete the transaction.

ct AUTH ONLY
PRINTING

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while receipt is printed. Displays if a printer is detected and print receipts is enabled - print error message for non-approved transactions (voids, referrals, declines, time-outs, expired cards, host errors and comm errors).

ct AUTH ONLY
PRINTING ERROR

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (beep) if a printer error is detected.

ct AUTH ONLY
TEARNOW PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached, no printer error is detected and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99 wait 99 seconds).

ct AUTH ONLY
TRANSACTION DECLINED

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (beep) and returns to idle mode if the AUTH RESPONSE CODE indicates declined.

ct AUTH ONLY
EXPIRED CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (beep) and returns to idle mode if the AUTH RESPONSE CODE indicates an expired card.

ct AUTH ONLY
AP XXXXXX SEQ nnn

[π] [π] [π]

Displays if transaction is approved. Aborts to idle mode.

Address Verification Service (AVS) Response Code Definitions			
A	Address Match Only	U	Address Information Not Available
E	Not eligible for AVS	W	9-digit Zip Code OK
N	No Match	X	Exact Match
R	Retry, System Unavailable	Y	Exact Match
S	Service Not Supported	Z	5-digit Zip Code OK
G	International Address Unavailable	B	International Address Match Only*
C	International Address and Postal Code Unavailable*	D	International Exact Match*
I	International Address Unavailable*	M	International Street Address and Postal Code Match*
P	International Postal Code Match Only*		

Card Verification Value 2 Response Codes	
M	CVV2 Match
N	No CVV2 Match
P	CVV2 Value Not Processed
S	No CVV2 Value Submitted*
U	The issuer is either not VISA certified or did not assign a CVV2 to the card number*
Blank	No data provided in processing response

*NOTE: Codes only appear on VISA transactions.

Auth Only Sale

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

	Blank line
DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
AUTH ONLY	Transaction type (bold and centered)
THIS TRANSACTION IS NOT A COMPLETE SALE	Disclaimer (centered)
	Blank line
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
VS nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type and number
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
	Blank line
INVOICE: 1007 SERVER ID: n	Invoice number, employee ID
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
AVS Code: X CC Result: X	AVS and CVV2 responses (if enabled)
FOOD/BEV/TAX \$ n.nn	Food, beverage, tax amount, if tip processing enabled: pre-tip amount line (bold)
TIP \$ n.nn	Blank tip line, if tip processing enabled: tip amount line (bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Blank total line, if tip processing enabled: total amount line (bold)
	Blank line
I AGREE TO PAY ABOVE TOTAL AMOUNT ACCORDING TO MERCHANT AGREEMENT	Printed if PROMISSORY FOOTER enabled (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
	Blank line
TRANSACTION DECLINED	If decline response (advance paper and abort)
TRANSACTION REFERED	If referral response or other error (advance paper and abort)
EXPIRED CARD	If expired card response (advance paper and abort)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
	Blank line
X _____	Signature line (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
<cardholder name>	Card holder name if Format B TRACK I data

	available and CARDHOLDER NAME is enabled
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

Open Bar Tab

The open bar tab function does an on-line pre-authorization for a specified amount. The merchant may choose a default open tab amount. This function is only available if the open tab option (DLL FILE) is enabled. If open tab receipts is enabled, a receipt will print for reference. Blank lines will print for base (pre-tip), tip and total. The pre-auth amount will print in the format: Annnnnnn where nnnnnnn is the pre-auth amount (with a \$ symbol). Debit open tab transactions are not supported.

SWIPE CARD FOR TAB mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Swipe card or press [SALE] to enter account number manually. Displays if open bar tab is enabled and the default transaction is open bar tab.

[π] [π] [π]

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
--

Press [SALE]. Displays if the default transaction is a sale transaction.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH FULL CLOSE NOW

Displays for 2 seconds or until [ENTER] is pressed and return to the idle state/prompt, if the batch is full.

[π] [π] [π]

DINE TAB ↓ ↓

Select TAB. Displays if the option is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

BAR TAB ENTER ACCOUNT #

Swipe the card or enter the account number.

[π] [π] [π]

NO SERVICE BAR TAB

Displays for 2 seconds and abort to idle prompt if there is no match in the card range table (match is based on the account number swiped/keyed and on the card type range min/max prefix and range min/max length).

[π] [π] [π]

BAR TAB ct TRANSACTION?

Press [YES] to confirm or [NO] to search for another match for a different card type (if none found, abort to idle prompt). Displays if card type confirmation is enabled; otherwise process match without confirmation.

[π] [π] [π]

BAR TAB INVALID ACCOUNT #

Displays for 2 seconds and return to idle prompt if the account number check digit is not valid.

[π] [π] [π]

BAR TAB
NOT ALLOWED FOR ct

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to idle prompt for debit transactions or if the card type service does not indicate capture.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter open bar tab password. Displays if open tab protection is enabled. (local option)

ct BAR TAB
ENTER LAST 4 DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the last four digits of the card number. Displays if card is swiped and the card swipe verification indicates enter last 4 digits of the account number for confirmation.

ct BAR TAB
MISMATCHED DIGITS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (with the digits keyed 'nnnn') for 2 seconds (beep) and return to the previous prompt if the digits keyed do not match the last 4 digits from the swiped account number.

Nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn
IS CARD # CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to confirm account number embossed on card or press [NO] to return to the idle prompt. Displays if card is swiped and the card swipe verification indicates display track data for confirmation.

ct BAR TAB
ENTER EXP DATE-MMY

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the expiration date. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed.

ct BAR TAB
INVALID DATE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to enter exp date. This is displayed if the date entered is not a valid month/year combination.

ct BAR TAB
EXPIRED CARD

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to idle prompt. This is displayed if expiration date is expired.

ct BAR TAB
IS CARD PRESENT?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] if the card is present or [NO] if the card is not present. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed and the bypass card present option is disabled.

ct BAR TAB
IMPRINT CARD NOW!

[π] [π] [π]

Imprint card and press [ENTER]. This will only be displayed if the account number is manually keyed and card present is indicated ([YES] pressed above or card present default enabled).

TAB PRE-AUTH AMOUNT
\$nnnn

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to use default open tab amount or [NO] to override and enter the proper default amount. Displays if the default open tab amount (host option) is non-zero ('nnnn' is the default open bar tab amount).

TOTAL \$NNNN
IS THIS CORRECT?

[π] [π] [π]

If amount is correct, press [ENTER], if not, press [BACK SPACE] and re-enter the proper opening bar tab amount.

ct BAR TAB
ENTER INVOICE #

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the invoice number. Displays if key invoice number is enabled; otherwise an invoice number is generated automatically.

ct BAR TAB
ENTER EMP ID

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the employee (SVR, CLK, ...) ID. Displays if employee ID processing is enabled.

ct BAR TAB
COMM STATUS

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while terminal connects to host. Displays comm status (DIALING..., TRANSMITTING..., RECEIVING...).

CALL VOICE CENTER!
PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER]. Displays (beep) if the authorization response code indicates a referral (R) or processor time out (O). Disable inactivity timeout to idle.

ENTER APPROVAL CODE
OR PRESS CLEAR

[π] [π] [π]

Enter voice approval code (do not allow [ENTER] key bypass) or press [CLEAR] to return to the idle state/prompt. This message is displayed if [ENTER] was pressed at CALL VOICE CENTER? prompt. Disable inactivity timeout to idle.

ct BAR TAB
PRINTING...

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while receipt is printed. Displays if a printer is attached and receipt printing is enabled.

ct BAR TAB
TEAR NOW PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

ct BAR TAB
TRANS DECLINED

[π] [π] [π]

Displays (beep) and return to idle mode leaving display if the auth response code indicates declined.

ct BAR TAB
ERROR MESSAGE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays error message (beep) and return to idle mode leaving display if the auth response code does not indicate an approval or any other error occurs during the processing of the message to the host.

<i>ct</i>	BAR TAB
AP XXXXXX	SEQ nnn

Return to idle leaving display.

[π] [π] [π]

Open Tab Receipt Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
OPEN TAB	Transaction type (bold and centered)
THIS TRANSACTION IS NOT A COMPLETE SALE	Disclaimer (centered)
	Blank line
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
VS nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type and number
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
INVOICE: 1006 SERVER ID: n	Invoice number, employee ID
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
PRE-AUTH AMOUNT \$nn.nn	Open tab pre-authorization amount
FOOD/BEV/TAX \$ ____.	Food, beverage, tax amount, if tip processing enabled: pre-tip amount line (bold)
TIP \$ ____.	Blank tip line, if tip processing enabled: tip amount line (bold)
TOTAL \$ ____.	Blank total line, if tip processing enabled: total amount line (bold)
I AGREE TO PAY ABOVE TOTAL AMOUNT ACCORDING TO MERCHANT AGREEMENT	Printed if PROMISSORY FOOTER enabled (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
	Blank line
TRANSACTION DECLINED	If decline response (advance paper and abort)
TRANSACTION REFERED	If referral response or other error (advance paper and abort)
EXPIRED CARD	If expired card response (advance paper and abort)
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
	Blank line
X _____	Signature line (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
<cardholder name>	Card holder name if Format B TRACK I data

	available and CARDHOLDER NAME is enabled
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

Void

The void transaction is used to delete or void a transaction that is stored in the current batch. Open tab transactions may be voided using this function but will be physically deleted from the batch and can, therefore, only be reprinted if the void was the last transaction performed.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [VOID].

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the void level password and press [ENTER]. If password protection is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

INV SEQ PAN
↓ ↓ ↓

Select INV, SEQ or PAN.

[π] [π] [π]

Set LAST MENU to INV, SEQ PAN menu.

VOID
ENTER INVOICE #

Enter the invoice number. This is displayed if INV is selected above.

[π] [π] [π]

VOID
ENTER SEQUENCE #

Enter the sequence number. This is displayed if SEQ is selected above.

[π] [π] [π]

VOID
ENTER LAST 5 OF PAN

Enter the last 5 digits of the account number. This is displayed if PAN is selected above.

[π] [π] [π]

VOID
NO DATA TO PROCESS

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and return to invoice number, sequence number or pan entry prompt. This is displayed if the requested key is not found.

[π] [π] [π]

Repeat the following steps for each occurrence of the invoice number, sequence number or account number entered in the previous step or from a review function. After last match return to invoice, sequence or account number entry prompt or the review function as appropriate.

nnn: INV nnnnnnnnnn
ct VOID NOT ALLOWED

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to look for next match. Displays for debit transactions.

VOID INV nnnnnnnnnn?
Nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn

[π] [π] [π]

Press [YES] to select or [NO] to return ('nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn' = account number).

Void Item NNN. Press
ENTER TO CONFIRM!

[π] [π] [π]

Wait while void receipt is printed. Displays if a printer is attached and receipt printing is enabled.

SEQ #NNN UPDATED!

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait for receipt to print.

ct VOID
TEARNOW PRESS ENTER

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue. Displays if thermal printer attached and the second receipt timer is not 00 and until [ENTER] is pressed or the second receipt timer expires (if 99, wait 99 seconds).

Void Sale

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
VOID	If voided (bold and centered)
	Blank line
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
VS nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type and number
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
INVOICE: 1006 SERVER ID: n	Invoice number, employee ID
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
VOIDED	Total line
TOTAL \$ n.nn	
I AGREE TO PAY ABOVE TOTAL AMOUNT ACCORDING TO MERCHANT AGREEMENT	Printed if PROMISSORY FOOTER enabled (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
	Blank line
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
	Blank line
X _____	Signature line (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
<cardholder name>	Card holder name if Format B TRACK I data available and CARDHOLDER NAME is enabled
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

Check

TeleCheck authorization only service allows the terminal to call, receive an authorization number and print a receipt for checks, just like an authorization only procedure for credit cards and debit cards. The authorization number is not stored in the terminal memory, however. Please follow the procedures below to use the TeleCheck authorization only service.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [CHECK] key.

TeleCheck SLIDE CHECK

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the check or press [ENTER] to enter MICR data manually.

ROUTING NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

If asked, enter the transit number and press [ENTER].

ACCOUNT NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

If asked, enter the account number and press [ENTER].

CHECK NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

If asked, enter the check number and press [ENTER].

CHECK TYPE Personal/Business

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

If the check is personal, press the left [π] key, if business, press the right [π] key.

BILLING #

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the B.C.N. and press [ENTER].

AMOUNT OF CHECK
\$0.00

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the amount of the check and press [ENTER].

CONFIRM AMOUNT
\$0.00

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the amount for confirmation and press [ENTER].

CASH BACK AMOUNT
\$0.00

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the amount for confirmation and press [ENTER].

CONFIRM AMOUNT
\$0.00

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the cash-back amount for confirmation and press [ENTER].

PRODUCT CODE

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the product code and press [ENTER].

SWIPE ID

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, swipe the DL or press [ENTER] to enter Manually.

ID TYPE

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the ID type and press [ENTER].

ID #

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the ID number and press [ENTER].

SECOND ID TYPE

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the second ID type and press [ENTER].

ID #

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the second ID number and press [ENTER].

D.O.B.

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the D.O.B. mmddyy or mmddyyyy and press [ENTER].

NAME

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the name and press [ENTER].

HOME PHONE NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the home phone number and press [ENTER].

WORK PHONE

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the work phone number and press [ENTER].

ADDRESS

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the address and press [ENTER].

CITY

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the city and press [ENTER].

STATE

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the state code and press [ENTER].

ZIP CODE

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the ZIP code and press [ENTER].

EXP. DATE

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the expiration date and press [ENTER].

INITIALS

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the initials and press [ENTER].

CLERK ID

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the clerk ID and press [ENTER].

"CUSTOM PROMPT"

[π] [π] [π]
(optional)

If asked, enter the value and press [ENTER].

Telecheck
DIALING

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

Keep check 4 deposit
APPROVED NNNN

[π] [π] [π]

When the transaction is approved, a new receipt will print. Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

Check Approval Receipt Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

CHECK APPROVAL	Type of receipt (bold and centered)
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date (centered)
MER# NNNNNNN TERM# NNN	Merchant ID and Terminal ID
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
	Blank line
SALE	Transaction type (bold and centered)
AMOUNT: \$ n.nn	Transaction amount
	Blank line
PHONE # nnnnnnn	Check customer phone number
APPROVED +NNNN	Approval number (centered)
INSTRUCTIONS (IF ANY)	Special instructions, if any (centered)
	Blank line
X -----	Signature line
<Check Writer's Signature>	
-----	Customer name line
<Check Writer's Name>	
-----	Customer address line
<Check Writer's Street>	
-----	Customer city, state, ZIP line
<Check Writer's City, State, ZIP>	

TeleCheck ECA Sale

TeleCheck Electronic Check Acceptance allows the terminal to call, receive an electronic approval and print a receipt for checks just like for credit cards and debit cards. These transactions require a MICR check reader to be attached to the terminal if you do not wish to enter the check MICR information manually. Please follow the procedures below to use TeleCheck ECA.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [CHECK] key.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter Check Service level password and press [ENTER]. Displays if password protection is enabled for this function.

Telecheck ECA Change/Sale/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key.

Telecheck ECA SLIDE CHECK

[π] [π] [π]

Slide the check through the check reader or press [ENTER] to enter MICR data manually.

ROUTING NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

Manual Entry:

Displays if [ENTER] was pressed for manual entry. When prompted please enter Routing number then press [ENTER].

ACCOUNT NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

Manual Entry:

Displays after Routing number entry. When prompted please enter Account number then press [ENTER].

CHECK NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

Manual Entry:

Displays after Account number entry. When prompted please enter Check number then press [ENTER].

CHECK TYPE Personal/Business

If the check is personal, press the left [π] key, if business, press the right [π] key.

[π] [π] [π]

Telecheck ECA
DIALING

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

ECA Sale
OK

[π] [π] [π]

Optional Prompts:

When the transaction is approved, a new receipt will print. Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

BILLING #

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the B.C.N. and press [ENTER].

HOME PHONE NUMBER

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the home phone number and press [ENTER].

CONFIRM AMOUNT
\$0.00

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the amount for confirmation and press [ENTER].

PRODUCT CODE

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the product code and press [ENTER].

ID #

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the ID number and press [ENTER].

ID TYPE

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the ID type and press [ENTER].

ACCOUNT #

If asked, enter the account number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

CHECK #

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the check number and press [ENTER].

ID ZIP CODE

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the ZIP code and press [ENTER].

AMOUNT OF CHECK
\$0.00

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the amount of the check and press [ENTER].

SOCIAL SECURITY #

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the Social Security number and press [ENTER].

D.O.B.

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the D.O.B. mmddyy or mmddyyyy and press [ENTER].

INITIALS

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the initials and press [ENTER].

CLERK ID

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the clerk ID and press [ENTER].

"CUSTOM PROMPT"

[π] [π] [π]

If asked, enter the value and press [ENTER].

ECA Change

This procedure allows the user to change the dollar amount on a previously approved check transaction.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [CHECK] key.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter Check Service level password and press [ENTER]. Displays if password protection is enabled for this function.

Telecheck ECA Change/Sale/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select CHANGE.

Telecheck ECA Batch Seq.#
[π] [π] [π]

Enter the transaction number in the batch to be changed and press [ENTER]. Key in [9] [9] [9] for the most recent transaction or just press [ENTER] for the first.

Seq#:N Chk# N
Amount: \$n.nn

[π] [π] [π]

Displayed for 2 seconds stored transaction information. (Press [ENTER] to continue without waiting.)

Telecheck ECA Continue/Sel.Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key if the transaction amount displayed on the previous screen has to be changed. Press the right [π] key to select another transaction.

NEW AMOUNT
\$n.nn

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the new amount of the check and press [ENTER].

Telecheck ECA DIALING

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

ECA Change
OK

[π] [π] [π]

When the transaction is approved, a new receipt will print. Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

ECA Void

This transaction allows you to void a previously approved transaction.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [CHECK] key.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter Check Service level password and press [ENTER]. Displays if password protection is enabled for this function.

Telecheck ECA Change/Sale/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHER .

Telecheck ECA Review/Void/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the center [π] key to select VOID.

Telecheck ECA Batch Seq.#

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the transaction number of the item to be voided and press [ENTER].

Seq#:N Chk# N
Amount: \$n.nn

[π] [π] [π]

Displayed for 2 seconds stored transaction information. (Press [ENTER] to continue without waiting.)

Telecheck ECA Continue/Sel.Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select CONTINUE if the transaction amount displayed on the previous screen has to be voided. Press the right [π] key to select OTHER for another transaction.

ECA Void OK

[π] [π] [π]

When the transaction is approved, a new receipt will print. Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

ECA Review

This feature allows the user to review previous ECA check transactions.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [CHECK] key.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter Check Service level password and press [ENTER]. Displays if password protection is enabled for this function.

Telecheck ECA Change/Sale/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHER.

Telecheck ECA Review/Void/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select REVIEW.

Telecheck ECA Batch Seq.#

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the sequence number and press [ENTER]. Just press [ENTER] to begin with the first transaction in the batch.

Seq#:N Chk# N
Amount: \$n.nn

[π] [π] [π]

Displays the selected transaction. Press [ENTER] to scroll forward in the batch or [BACK SPACE] to scroll backward in the batch. Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

ECA Report

This feature allows the user to print a report of all open ECA check transactions.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [CHECK] key.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter Check Service level password and press [ENTER]. Displays if password protection is enabled for this function.

TELECHECK ECA Change/Sale/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHER.

TELECHECK ECA Review/Void/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHER.

TELECHECK ECA Close/Report/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the center [π] key to select REPORT.

Printing

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait for the report to print.

Telecheck ECA Report Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

REPORT	Type of receipt (bold and centered)
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Time and date report was printed (centered)
MER# NNNNNNN TERM# NNN	Merchant ID and Terminal ID
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
	Blank line
BATCH #NNN OPENED	Batch number information
DATE: NN/NN/NN TIME: NN:NN	Date and time current batch was opened
	Blank line
=====	
TRANS # - TYPE CHECK #	Report headings
CLERK AMOUNT APPROVAL	

NNN - ELECTRONIC NNN	Transaction number, type, check number,
\$n.nn NNNN	dollar amount, approval code
TRACE # NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN	Trace ID
	Blank line

TOTAL ECA TRANSACTIONS N	Total number of check transactions in batch
SETTLEMENT AMOUNT: \$n.nn	Total batch amount
=====	
REPORT PRINTED	
DATE: NN/NN/NN TIME: NN:NN	Date and time report was printed

ECA Close

This transaction closes or settles the ECA batch of check transactions.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [CHECK] key.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter Check Service level password and press [ENTER]. Displays if password protection is enabled for this function.

Telecheck ECA Change/Sale/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHER.

Telecheck ECA Review/Void/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OTHER.

Telecheck ECA Close/Report/Other

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select CLOSE.

Printing

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait for the batch report to print.

SETTLEMENT AMOUNT \$n.nn

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the settlement amount printed on the batch report and press [ENTER].

ECA Close DIALING

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait...

ECA Close Done

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait for the close receipt to print. Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

Telecheck ECA Close Receipt Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

CLOSE	Type of receipt (bold and centered)
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Time and date report was printed (centered)
MER# NNNNNNN TERM# NNN	Merchant ID and Terminal ID
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
	Blank line
BATCH #NNN OPENED	Batch number information
DATE: NN/NN/NN TIME: NN:NN	Date and time current batch was opened
	Blank line
SETTLED: \$ n.nn	
	Blank line
REPORT PRINTED	
DATE: NN/NN/NN TIME: NN:NN	Date and time report was printed

ECA Clear Batch

This transaction deletes, not closes or settles, the entire ECA batch. A special code (103) is used during the ECA Clear Batch process which must be keyed into the terminal when prompted.

Display Message

Operator Action

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
DEC-10-01 MON 12:00P

Press the [CHECK] key.

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter Check Service (or higher) level password. Displays if password protection is enabled for this function.

[π] [π] [π]

Telecheck ECA
Change/Sale/Other

Press the right [π] key to select OTHER.

[π] [π] [π]

Telecheck ECA
Review/Void/Other

Press the right [π] key to select OTHER.

[π] [π] [π]

Telecheck ECA
Close/Report/Other

Press the right [π] key to select OTHER.

[π] [π] [π]

Telecheck ECA
Func/ /Other

Press the left [π] key to select FUNC.

[π] [π] [π]

FUNCTION

Press [1] [0] [3] and then press [ENTER] to delete ECA batch file.

[π] [π] [π]

Delete ECA Batch
Yes / No

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to delete the batch or the right [π] key to exit the function.

Are you sure?
Yes / No

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to delete the batch or the right [π] key to exit the function.

Close Batch

Operator Initiated Close Batch

The close batch transaction sends the batch totals and detail (if required) to the host for settlement processing. The terminal sends everything that you can capture (sale, void off-line sale, off-line refund, close tab, adjustment and void detail) before sending the batch totals. The terminal will print a batch summary report and close the current batch in which the terminal will upload the entire batch to the host. The batch cannot be settled if open tabs or untipped items exist; if they do exist, the terminal will print an open tabs and/or a missing tip report if the host option to print open tabs/tips report is enabled before the close procedures begin. The ability to confirm by a screen display the total number of items and the net dollar amount just before sending the batch is available. When the batch has successfully closed, a batch close report will print.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [CLOSE].

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the password and press [ENTER]. Displays if settle function password protection is enabled (local option).

[π] [π] [π]

Close Batch #nn
Scanning Trans...

Please wait for the transactions to be scanned and printed.

[π] [π] [π]

ZERO ALL UNADJ TIPS?

Either press [ENTER] to zero-out all unadjusted tips or press [BACKSPACE] to edit unadjusted tips.

[π] [π] [π]

nnn: INV nnn
54XXXXXXXXXX001 OK?

If an unsettled bar tab or an untipped transaction exists in the batch, the transaction information appears. Press [ENTER] to settle bar tab. **NOTE:** Bar tab must be settled before batch can be closed.

[π] [π] [π]

nnn: AUTH: \$X.XX
CLOSE VOID NEXT

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to settle the transaction, the middle [π] key to void the tab or the right [π] key to view the next transaction.

BASE: \$X.XX
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the tab base dollar amount and press [ENTER].

TIP: \$X.XX
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the transaction tip amount and press [ENTER]. If there is no tip, press [ENTER].

NNN: TOTAL \$X.XX
OK EDIT

[π] [π] [π]

If the total amount displayed is correct, press the left [π] key under the OK prompt, if the amount is not correct, press the right [π] key under the EDIT prompt.

SEQ #nnn UPDATED

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait for the adjusted transaction receipt to print.

SCAN COMPLETE

[π] [π] [π]

Displays if there are no more untipped items or unclosed tabs to adjust.

PRINT REPORT?
YES NO

[π] [π] [π]

Either press the left [π] key to print final batch summary report or press the right [π] key to bypass this step and continue with the close.

NO TRANSACTIONS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds (beep) and aborts to the idle prompt if there are no non-deleted capture transactions in the batch and memory is not full.

N ITEMS
NET \$nnnn OK?

[π] [π] [π]

If the total number of batch transactions and the net dollar amount are correct, press [ENTER]. If not, press [CLEAR] and begin to close again.

DIALING...

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait while the terminal contacts the host computer.

COMM ERROR #nn
BATCH NOT CLOSED

[π] [π] [π]

If the batch was not closed, it will display a comm error number. Please see Appendix to confirm error code and call your card processor for further assistance.

SENDING SEQ nnn/nnn

[π] [π] [π]

As the batch closes, two sets of numbers are displayed. The set on the left is the number of transactions successfully sent to the host and the number on the set on the right is the total number of transactions in the batch. When both numbers match, the entire batch has been sent to the host computer.

SETTLEMENT COMPLETE
nnnnn

[π] [π] [π]

When the batch closes properly, the SETTLEMENT COMPLETE prompt will display along with the amount for which the batch was settled. The terminal may beep until the [CLEAR] button is pressed.

SETTLEMENT COMPLETE
nnnnn

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [CLEAR] button to clear the terminal and return to the idle prompt.

Close Batch Report

Any line where the net total (sales minus returns) is negative should print in red/inverse. Unless specified, leading zeroes are suppressed for numeric fields (down to \$0.00 for amounts or '0' for other numeric fields) and the data is right justified within the column; alphanumeric fields are left justified within the column with trailing spaces. Leading and trailing spaces should be removed before text is centered. Net totals imply sales minus returns. If server reporting, cash back entry, tip entry or AVS do not apply then the associated header entries and columns fields should be filled with spaces (these fields will be shown italicized in the report format below).

Close Batch Report Sample

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment

BATCH CLOSE REPORT	
*** DEMO MODE ***	
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
Items: N	Number of settled items
Response: SETTLEMENT COMPLETE	Settlement response
nnnnnnnnnnnnnn	

Auto Close Batch

An auto close batch session is similar to the operator-initiated settlement with the following exceptions: open tabs are automatically deleted, unadjusted transactions are ignored, the settlement totals are neither confirmed nor requested and no password is required.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
--

[π] [π] [π]

If the terminal is set to auto close, no key needs to be pressed for the close process to begin.

AUTO CLOSE in nn SECS mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
--

[π] [π] [π]

Displays when the auto close timer begins the countdown to closing the batch.

DIALING...

[π] [π] [π]

The terminal will delete open tabs if they exist and display the terminal comm status (DIALING..., TRANSMITTING..., RECEIVING...) as the close process continues.

SENDING SEQ 000/000

[π] [π] [π]

As the batch closes, two sets of numbers are displayed. The set on the left is the number of transactions successfully sent to the host and the number on the set on the right is the total number of transactions in the batch. When both numbers match, the entire batch has been sent to the host computer.

COMM ERROR #nn BATCH NOT CLOSED

[π] [π] [π]

If the batch was not closed, it will display a comm error number. Please see Appendix to confirm error code and call your card processor for further assistance.

SETTLEMENT COMPLETE nnnnn

[π] [π] [π]

When the batch closes properly, SETTLEMENT COMPLETE prompt will display along with the amount for which the batch was settled. The terminal may beep until the [CLEAR] button is pressed.

Adjustments

The adjustment functions allow modification of transactions that are stored in the current batch. The types of adjustments supported are editing of the transaction amount by employee ID, closing a tab, voiding a transaction, adding a tip to or editing an existing tip on a transaction. The transactions are selected by invoice number, sequence number, account number or employee ID as applicable. The operator can confirm the transaction found and make the desired adjustment or can search for another match on the invoice number, sequence number or account number.

Edit

The edit function is used to modify a transaction amount within the current batch. If tip processing is disabled, edit will be assumed and the EDIT, TAB, TIP menu screen will not be displayed.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ADJUST].

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the password and press [ENTER]. Displays if edit password protection is enabled.

EDIT TABS TIP
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select EDIT. This screen is displayed if TIP PROCESSING is enabled or TAB PROCESSING is enabled. If both TIP and TAB PROCESSING are disabled, this screen will not be an option and EDIT will be assumed.

INV SEQ PAN
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select INV, SEQ or PAN.

EDIT
ENTER INVOICE #

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the invoice number. This is displayed if INV is selected above.

EDIT
ENTER SEQUENCE #

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the sequence number. This is displayed if SEQ is selected above.

EDIT
ENTER LAST 5 OF PAN

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the account number assigned to the transaction. This is displayed if PAN is selected above.

EDIT
NO DATA TO PROCESS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and returns to enter another invoice number, sequence number or emp ID number. This is displayed if no matching transactions are found on the first attempt.

Repeat the following steps for each occurrence of the invoice, sequence or account number entered in the previous step. Press [CLEAR] at any time to return to the idle prompt. Repeat the following steps for the selected transaction only if edit is initiated from another function.

Display Message

Operator Action

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the password and press [ENTER].

nnn: INV nnnnnnnnnn
ct EDIT NOT ALLOWED

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to search for next match. Displays for debit transactions.

OPN: INV nnnnnnnnnn
CLOSE TAB?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to close tab (see close tab procedure below) or NO to search for next match. Displays for open tab transactions.

nnn: INV nnnnnnnnnn
nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn OK?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to select or [BACK SPACE] to search for another match ('nnn'=sequence number or 'OPN' for open tabs, 'nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn' = last 16 digits of the account number).

BASE: \$nnnnn.nn
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] or enter new base amount to change. This is displayed if more than one amount field applies.

TAX: \$nnnnn.nn
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] or enter new tax amount to change. (This is displayed if tax entry applies).

TIP: \$nnnnn.nn
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] or enter new tip amount to change. This is displayed if TIP PROCESSING is enabled (host option).

001: TOTAL \$nnnnn.nn
OK EDIT

[π] [π] [π]

If the displayed total is correct, press the left [π] key, if not, press the right [π] key and repeat the previous steps.

TOTAL \$nnnnn.nn
AMOUNT TOO LARGE!

[π] [π] [π]

SEQ #001 UPDATED

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for two seconds and returns to first amount screen above if an amount that exceeds the transaction amount limit is entered.

Displays for 2 seconds if adjusted successfully and searches for next match.

Close Tab

Close tab is used to close an open bar tab. This function is only available if bar tab is enabled. A re-authorization will be performed (for the entire settlement amount) when the close tab amount differs from the open tab amount by more than the auth tolerance allowed. If close tab receipts (host option) is enabled, a receipt will print for reference.

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
```

[π] [π] [π]

```
EDIT TABS TIP
  ↓   ↓   ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

```
INV SEQ EMP
  ↓   ↓   ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

```
EDIT          CLOSE TAB
ENTER INV#
```

[π] [π] [π]

```
OPN: INV nnnn
CLOSE TAB?
```

[π] [π] [π]

```
nnn AUTH: $nnnn
CLOSE TAB?
```

[π] [π] [π]

```
nnn AUTH: $nnnn
CLOSE VOID NEXT
```

[π] [π] [π]

```
BASE:          $nnnnn.nn
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE
```

[π] [π] [π]

```
TAX:          $nnnnn.nn
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ADJUST] when tab processing is enabled.

Select the middle [π] key to choose TABS.

Press either the left [π] key to choose to access tab by invoice number, the middle [π] key to access the tab by sequence number or the right [π] key to access the tab by employee ID.

Key in the number of the tab to be adjusted and press [ENTER].

Press [ENTER] if the correct transaction number is displayed.

Press [ENTER] if the correct transaction information is displayed.

Press the left [π] key to close the tab, the middle [π] key to void the tab or press the right [π] key to access another transaction.

Press [ENTER] or enter new base amount to change. This is displayed if more than one amount field applies.

Press [ENTER] or enter new tax amount to change. (This is displayed if tax entry applies).

TIP: \$nnnnn.nn
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] or enter new tip amount to change. This is displayed if tip processing is enabled (host option).

nnn: TOTAL \$nnn
OK EDIT

[π] [π] [π]

If the transaction total is correct, press the left [π] key, if not, press the right [π] key to edit the transaction amount further.

SEQ #nnn UPDATED

[π] [π] [π]

Please wait for the updated transaction receipt to print.

Repeat the following steps for the selected transaction if a close tab is initiated from another function.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter close tab level password and press [ENTER].

nnn AUTH: \$nnnn
CLOSE VOID NEXT

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to close the tab, the middle [π] key to void the tab or press the right [π] key to access another transaction.

TOTAL: \$nnnnn.nn
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to accept or enter new total amount. This is displayed if only a single amount field applies.

BASE: \$nnnnn.nn
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to accept or enter new base amount. This is displayed if tip processing is enabled.

TIP: \$nnnnn.nn
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to accept or enter new tip amount. This is displayed if tip processing is enabled.

EDIT CLOSE TAB
SERVER ID

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the new employee ID number. This is displayed if employee ID processing is enabled.

OPN: INV nnn CLOSE TAB?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] if the correct transaction information is displayed and follow the steps displayed previously.

END OF TABS N

[π] [π] [π]

Prompt displays for 2 seconds.

Print SRV nnn Rpt? YES NO

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to print a report of the transactions for the employee ID number displayed or press the right [π] key to bypass this prompt.

INV SEQ EMP ↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

If no more matches on invoice number, account number or employee ID, terminal will return to invoice number, sequence number or employee ID entry prompt. Press [CLEAR] to return to idle prompt.

Close Tab Receipt

123456789012345678901234567890

Comment:

DEMO	If demo mode (bold and centered)
CLOSE TAB	Transaction type (bold and centered)
	Blank line
<DBA Name>	DBA Name (centered)
<DBA street address>	DBA Street Address (centered)
DBA city, state and zip	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
<optional header 1>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
<optional header 2>	If not spaces (centered, bold if 20 char or less)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
	Blank line
TIME: hh:mm DATE: mm/dd/yy	Transaction time and date
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
VS nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Card type and number
EXP: nnnn	Card expiration date
INVOICE: 1006 SERVER ID: n	Invoice number, employee ID
APPROVAL CODE: nnnnnn SEQ: nnn	Approval code, sequence (transaction) number
ADJUSTED	Adjusted food, beverage and tax amount (bold)
FOOD/BEV/TAX \$ n.nn	
TIP \$ n.nn	Adjusted tip amount (bold)
TOTAL \$ n.nn	Adjusted total amount (bold)
I AGREE TO PAY ABOVE TOTAL AMOUNT ACCORDING TO MERCHANT AGREEMENT	Printed if PROMISSORY FOOTER enabled (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
	Blank line
DEMONSTRATION ONLY	If in demo mode (bold, centered)
	Blank line
X _____	Signature line (omitted for 2nd copy on thermal printer receipts)
<cardholder name>	Card holder name if Format B TRACK 1 data available and CARDHOLDER NAME is enabled
TOP COPY-MERCHANT BOTTOM COPY-CUSTOMER	Receipt distribution
	Blank lines to advance above the tear strip of attached printer

Add Tip

The tip transaction is used to add a tip amount to a stored unadjusted (zero tip) transaction. Only the tip can be edited. This transaction will only be available if the tip processing option is enabled.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

EDIT TAB TIP
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

INV SEQ EMP
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

EDIT ADD TIP
ENTER INVOICE #

[π] [π] [π]

EDIT ADD TIP
ENTER SEQ #

[π] [π] [π]

ADD TIP
ENTER EMPLOYEE ID

[π] [π] [π]

ADD TIP
NO DATA TO PROCESS

[π] [π] [π]

nnn: INV nnnn
nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn OK?

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ADJUST].

Press the left [π] key to select TIP.

Enter the tip level password and press [ENTER]. Displays if add tip password protection is enabled.

Press the appropriate [π] key to select INV, SEQ or EMP. Employee ID option is not displayed if EMPLOYEE ID PROCESSING is disabled.

Enter the invoice number. This is displayed if INV is selected above.

Enter the sequence number. This is displayed if SEQ is selected above.

Enter the employee ID This is displayed if EMP is selected above.

Displays for 2 seconds and return to enter another invoice number, sequence number or employee ID. This is displayed if no matching transactions are found on the first attempt.

If the correct transaction information is displayed, press [ENTER] to add the tip to the transaction.

Repeat the following steps for each occurrence of an 'un-tipped' (zero tip) transaction for the invoice number, sequence number or employee ID entered in the previous step. After last match, return to enter a new invoice, sequence or employee ID number as applicable.

TIP: \$nnnnn.nn
ENTER AMT TO CHANGE

Enter the tip amount and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

nnn: TOTAL \$nnn
OK EDIT

Press the left [π] key if the new transaction total is correct or press the right [π] key to add a new tip amount to the transaction.

[π] [π] [π]

SEQ #nnn UPDATED

Prompt displays for 2 seconds.

[π] [π] [π]

INV SEQ EMP
↓ ↓ ↓

If no more matches on invoice number, account number or employee ID, terminal will return to invoice number, sequence number or employee ID entry prompt. Press [CLEAR] to return to idle prompt.

[π] [π] [π]

Review

Batch Totals Review

The batch totals function displays the total number of settlement items (sales plus returns) and the net dollar amount (sales minus returns) for the batch; totals for sales and for returns are shown as well if returns are enabled. *NOTE: Auth only and open tab transaction amounts and count are not reflected in these totals.*

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE mm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [REVIEW].

[π] [π] [π]

TOTALS	TRAN	DETAIL
↓	↓	↓

Select TOTALS.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH	EMP	CARD
↓	↓	↓

Select BATCH. The EMP option is displayed if employee processing is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the totals review level password if enabled and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

CURRENT	HISTORY
↓	↓

Select CURRENT.

[π] [π] [π]

TOTALS	REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS	

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the idle prompt if there are no transactions in the current batch on the first attempt.

[π] [π] [π]

Displays the following screens as applicable; after the last return to the BATCH, EMP, CARD selection menu.

BATCH	TOTALS
nnn ITEMS	\$nnn.nn

Press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH	TOTALS
nnn SALES	\$nnn.nn
[π]	[π]

Press [ENTER]. This is displayed if the returns host option is enabled.

Batch History Review

The batch history function is used to display the settle date, internal batch ID, total number of items and the net dollar amount for the most recent batch settled to the host.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE		
mm-dd-yy	ddd	hh:mm
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press [REVIEW].

TOTALS	TRAN	DETAIL
↓	↓	↓
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the left [π] key to select TOTALS.

BATCH	EMP	CARD
↓	↓	↓
[π]	[π]	[π]

Press the left [π] key to select BATCH. The emp option is displayed if employee processing is enabled.

ENTER PASSWORD		
[π]	[π]	[π]

Enter the totals review or higher level password if enabled and press [ENTER].

CURRENT	HISTORY
↓	↓
[π]	[π]

Select HISTORY.

HISTORY	REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS	
[π]	[π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the idle prompt if there are no settled batches stored on the first attempt.

Displays the following screen for each batch starting with the most recently closed batch (totals for up to 9 batches can be stored). After the last (oldest) batch, return to idle prompt.

BATCH	TOTALS
nnn ITEMS	\$nnn.nn
[π]	[π]

Press [ENTER]. This screen displays the number of items in the batch and the sales minus returns or the net settlement amount.

BATCH	TOTALS
nnn SALES	\$nnn.nn
[π]	[π]

Press [ENTER]. This is displayed if the returns host option is enabled. This screen displays the number of sale items in the batch and the sales amount only.

BATCH	TOTALS
nnn RETS	\$-nnn.nn
[π]	[π]

Press [ENTER]. This is displayed if the returns host option is enabled. This screen displays the number of return items in the batch and the return amount only.

mm/dd/yy	REF: nnnnn
nnn ITEMS	\$nnnn.nn
[π]	[π]

Press [ENTER]. The display shows the date the last transaction was settled, the batch reference number, the number of items in the batch and the net settlement amount.

Card Type Totals Review

The card type totals function displays the total number of settlement items (sales plus returns) and the net dollar amount (sales minus returns) for each card type reporting group; totals for sales and for returns are shown as well if returns are enabled. *Note: Auth only and open tab transaction amounts and count are not reflected in these totals.*

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press [REVIEW].

TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select TOTALS.

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select CARD. The EMP option is displayed if employee processing is enabled.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the totals review level password if enabled and press [ENTER].

TOTALS REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the idle prompt if there are no transactions in the current batch on the first attempt.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the totals review level password if enabled and press [ENTER].

Displays the following screens for each card type reporting group; after the last return to the BATCH, EMP, CARD selection menu.

xxxxxx=card type mnemonics from the first two card types in the group separated by a slash and followed by a '+' if there are more card types in the group (e.g. MC, VS, MC/VS, MC/VS/AX/DS/+,...).

ct	TOTALS
nnn ITEMS	\$nnnnnnn.nn
[π]	[π]

Press [ENTER]. This screen displays the card type, number of items in the batch and the sales minus returns or the net settlement amount for that card type.

ct	TOTALS
nnn SALES	\$nnnnnnn.nn
[π]	[π]

Press [ENTER]. *Displays if returns are enabled.* Press [ENTER]. This is displayed if the returns host option is enabled. This screen displays the card type, the number of sale items in the batch and the sales amount only for that card type.

ct	TOTALS
nnn RETS	\$nnnnn.nn
[π]	[π]

Press [ENTER]. *Displays if refunds are enabled.* This is displayed if the returns host option is enabled. This screen displays the card type, number of return items in the batch and the return amount only for that card type.

Employee Totals Review

The employee totals review function shows the net settlement amount, the number of items and the net tip amount (if TIP PROCESSING is enabled) for a selected employee or for all employees. *Note: Auth Only and Open Tab transaction amounts and count are not reflected in these totals.*

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press [REVIEW], if employee processing is enabled.

```
TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Select TOTALS.

```
BATCH EMP CARD
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Select EMP. The EMP option is displayed if employee processing is enabled.

```
EMP TOTALS REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS
```

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the idle prompt if there are no settlement transactions in the current batch on the first attempt.

```
EMP TOTALS REVIEW
ENTER EMPLOYEE ID
```

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the employee ID number or press [ENTER] for all.

```
EMP TOTALS REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS
```

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the idle prompt if there are no settlement transactions for the selected employee in the current batch on the first attempt.

```
ENTER PASSWORD
```

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the employee totals review password if enabled and press [ENTER].

Displays the following screen for the selected employee ID or for each if [ENTER] pressed to select all; after the last return to the BATCH, EMP, CARD selection menu.

```
EMP nnnn      $nnn.nn
# nnn TIPS    $nnn.nn
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER]. This screen displays the employee ID, total sales minus returns or net settlement amount, the number of items in the batch and the total tip settlement amount.

Review Transaction

This procedure is used to view a transaction in the open batch by invoice number, sequence or account number; adjustments, voids and reprints can be performed for a selected transaction.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press [REVIEW].

TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select [TRAN].

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the detail review or higher level password and press [ENTER] if enabled.

INV SEQ PAN
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select INV, SEQ or PAN.

TRAN REVIEW
ENTER INVOICE #

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the invoice number or press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt. This is displayed if INV is selected above.

TRAN REVIEW
ENTER SEQ #

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the sequence number or press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt. This is displayed if SEQ is selected above.

TRAN REVIEW
ENTER LAST 5 OF PAN

[π] [π] [π]



Enter the last 5 digits of the account number or press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt. This is displayed if PAN is selected above.

TRAN REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the invoice number, sequence number or PAN entry prompt if no transactions are found for the data entered on the first attempt.

The screens shown below can be displayed in the order shown for each transaction (including open tab transactions) and the following operator actions are valid at any screen:

- Press  or right [π] key to view the next detail screen. After last detail screen go to first screen.
- Press  to view the previous detail screen. After first detail screen go to last screen.

nnn: INV nnnn		
SALE:		\$nnnn
[π]	[π]	[π]

Whether chosen by invoice number, transaction sequence number or last five digits of PAN account number, this display shows the transaction sequence number, the invoice number, the transaction type and the transaction amount. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

BASE:		\$nnnnn
CASH:		\$nnnnn
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the transaction BASE amount as well as any other amount fields such as CASH. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

TAX:		\$nnnnn
TIP:		\$nnnnn
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the other amount fields such as TIP, TAX, or SURCHARGE. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

AP OK nnnn AV CC		
nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn		
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the approval code status, approval code number and the card number.

DATE: mm/dd/yy		
TIME: hh/mm	empn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the transaction date, time and ID of employee who entered it.

Batch/Employee Detail Review

The detail review function is used to view detail for all transactions or transactions for a selected employee ID in the current batch by displaying each transaction on the terminal display and allowing the user to scroll forward and backward through the transactions in the batch. Void, adjust (edit and close tab) and reprint operations may be performed on selected transactions as applicable.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press [REVIEW].

TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select DETAIL.

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select BATCH to review transactions for an entire batch or EMP to review transactions for a selected employee ID only. The EMP option appears if employee ID processing is enabled.

ALL TAB UNADJ
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select ALL for all transaction details.

DETAIL REVIEW
ENTER EMPLOYEE ID

[π] [π] [π]



Enter the employee ID number. Displays if EMP selected above.

DETAIL REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to ENTER EMP if transactions are found for the entered employee ID on the first attempt.

The screens shown below can be displayed in the order shown for each transaction (including open tab transactions) and the following operator actions are valid at any screen:

- Press  or right [π] key to view the next detail screen. After last detail screen go to first screen.
- Press  to view the previous detail screen. After first detail screen go to last screen.

nnn: INV nnnn		
SALE:	\$nnnn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Whether chosen by ALL or EMP, this display shows the transaction sequence number, the invoice number, the transaction type and the transaction amount. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

BASE:	\$nnnn	
CASH:	\$nnnn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the transaction BASE amount as well as any other amount fields such as CASH. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

TAX:	\$nnnn	
TIP:	\$nnnn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the other amount fields such as TIP, TAX, or SURCHARGE. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

AP OK nnnn AV CC		
nnnnnnnnnnnnnn		
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the approval code status, approval code number and the card number.

DATE: mm/dd/yy		
TIME: hh/mm	empn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the transaction date, time and ID of employee who entered it.

Open Tab Review

The open tab detail review function is used to view open tab detail for the batch or a selected employee ID by displaying each transaction on the terminal display and allowing the user to scroll forward and backward through the transactions in the batch. Void, close tab and reprint operations may be performed on selected transactions. This function is only available if tab processing is enabled.

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press [REVIEW] when tab processing is enabled.

```
TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Select DETAIL.

```
DETAIL/TAB REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS
```

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the idle prompt if there are no transactions in the current batch on the first attempt.

```
BATCH EMP CARD
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Select BATCH or EMP for detail for a selected employee ID only. The EMP option appears if employee ID processing is enabled.

```
ALL TAB UNADJ
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Select TAB for open tab detail. This only appears if DETAIL selected above and tip or tab processing is enabled; otherwise ALL is assumed.

```
ENTER PASSWORD
```

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the detail/tab review level password if enabled and press [ENTER].

```
DETAIL/TAB REVIEW
ENTER EMPLOYEE ID
```

[π] [π] [π]



Enter the employee ID number. Displays if EMP selected above.

```
DETAIL/TAB REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS
```

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to ENTER EMP ID if no transactions are found for the entered employee number on the first attempt.

The screens shown below can be displayed in the order shown for each open tab transaction and the following operator actions are valid at any screen:

- Press  or right [π] key to view the next detail screen. After last detail screen go to first screen.
- Press  to view the previous detail screen. After first detail screen go to last screen.

nnn: INV nnnn		
AUTH:		\$nnnn

[π] [π] [π]

BASE:		\$nnnnn
CASH:		\$nnnnn

[π] [π] [π]

TAX:		\$nnnnn
TIP:		\$nnnnn

[π] [π] [π]

AP OK nnnn AV CC		
nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn		

[π] [π] [π]

DATE: mm/dd/yy		
TIME: hh/mm		empn

[π] [π] [π]

Whether chosen by BATCH or EMP, this display shows the transaction sequence number, the invoice number, the transaction type and the transaction amount. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

This display screen shows the transaction BASE amount as well as any other amount fields such as CASH. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

This display screen shows the other amount fields such as TIP, TAX, or SURCHARGE. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

This display screen shows the approval code status, approval code number and the card number.

This display screen shows the transaction date, time and ID of employee who entered it.

Unadjusted Tip Review

The unadjusted tip review function is used to view non-debit sale transactions that have a zero tip. The ADJUST, REPRINT and VOID keys may be pressed when a transaction is selected in order to edit, add a tip, void or reprint the transaction.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press [REVIEW] when tip processing is enabled.

TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select DETAIL.

DETAIL REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the idle prompt if there are no transactions in the current batch on the first attempt.

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select BATCH or EMP for detail for a selected employee ID only. The EMP option appears if employee ID processing is enabled.

ALL TAB UNADJ
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select UNADJ for unadjusted tip detail. This only appears if DETAIL selected above and tip or tab processing is enabled, otherwise ALL is assumed.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the detail/unadjusted tip review level password if enabled and press [ENTER].

DETAIL REVIEW
ENTER EMPLOYEE ID

[π] [π] [π]



Enter the employee ID number. Displays if EMP selected above.

DETAIL REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to ENTER EMP if no transactions are found for the entered employee ID on the first attempt.

The screens shown below can be displayed in the order shown for each non-debit unadjusted (zero) tip sale transaction and the following operator actions are valid at any screen:

- Press  or right [π] key to view the next detail screen. After last detail screen go to first screen.
- Press  to view the previous detail screen. After first detail screen go to last screen.

nnn: INV nnnn		
SALE:	\$nnnnn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

Whether chosen by BATCH or EMP, this display shows the transaction sequence number, the invoice number, the transaction type and the transaction amount. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

BASE:	\$nnnnn	
CASH:	\$nnnnn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the transaction BASE amount as well as any other amount fields such as CASH. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

TAX:	\$nnnnn	
TIP:	\$nnnnn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the other amount fields such as TIP, TAX, or SURCHARGE. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

AP OK nnnn AV CC		
nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn		
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the approval code status, approval code number and the card number.

DATE: mm/dd/yy		
TIME: hh/mm	empn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the transaction date, time and ID of employee who entered it.

Card Type Detail Review

This function reviews transaction detail for a single card type reporting group. Each card type can be assigned a card type reporting group identifier (host defined). For example, MC and VS might be grouped in to one group and AX might be in a separate group. Card types can be grouped together (up to 9 card types to a group) or each card type can have its own group identifier but the grouping assigned determines how the detail for this function is presented; card types with the same card type reporting group indicator are grouped together.

```

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
    
```

Press [REVIEW].

[π] [π] [π]

```

TOTALS  TRAN  DETAIL
  ↓      ↓      ↓
    
```

Select DETAIL.

[π] [π] [π]

```

DETAIL          REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS
    
```

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the idle prompt if there are no transactions in the current batch on the first attempt.

[π] [π] [π]

```

BATCH EMP CARD
  ↓      ↓      ↓
    
```

Select CARD. The EMP option appears if employee ID processing is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

```

ENTER PASSWORD
    
```

Enter the detail review level password if enabled and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

```

MS/VS AX/DR OTHER
  ↓      ↓      ↓
    
```

Select a card type group by pressing the appropriate [π] key, then press ← or → to display card type transaction information or press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

[π] [π] [π]



```

DETAIL          REVIEW
NO DATA TO PROCESS
    
```

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the previous screen if no transactions exist for the selected group.

[π] [π] [π]

The screens shown below can be displayed in the order shown for each transaction in the selected card type reporting group; the following operator actions are valid at any screen:

- Press  or right [π] key to view the next detail screen. After last detail screen go to first screen.
- Press  to view the previous detail screen. After first detail screen go to last screen.

nnn: INV nnnn		
SALE:	\$nnnn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display shows the transaction sequence number, the invoice number, the transaction type and the transaction amount. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

BASE:	\$nnnnn	
CASH:	\$nnnnn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the transaction BASE amount as well as any other amount fields such as CASH. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

TAX:	\$nnnnn	
TIP:	\$nnnnn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the other amount fields such as TIP, TAX, or SURCHARGE. Press the [#] or the right [π] key to scroll through the transaction detail screens as described in the box above.

AP OK nnnn AV CC		
nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn		
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the approval code status, approval code number and the card number.

DATE: mm/dd/yy		
TIME: hh/mm	empn	
[π]	[π]	[π]

This display screen shows the transaction date, time and ID of employee who entered it.

REPORTS

Line Item Report

This function prints a line item report for the entire batch.

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press [PRINT].

```
TOTALS  TRAN  DETAIL
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Select TOTALS.

```
BATCH EMP  CARD
  ↓     ↓     ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Select BATCH. The EMP option appears if the employee ID processing is enabled.

```
ENTER PASSWORD
```

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the password and press [ENTER] if enabled (local option).

```
CURRENT  HISTORY
  ↓       ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Select CURRENT.

```
TOTALS      REPORT
NO DATA TO PROCESS
```

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the idle prompt if no data is found for the batch on the first attempt.

```
BATCH EMP  CARD
  ↓     ↓     ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

When the report has been printed, the terminal returns to the previous display. Either choose another report to print or press [CLEAR] to exit the function.

Line Item Report

1234567890123456789012345678901234567890

Comment

	Blank line
	Blank line
LINE ITEM REPORT	Report type (bold and centered)
	Blank line
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Name (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Street Address (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXX, XXX XXXXX-XXXX	DBA City, DBA State, DBA Zip[1-5], DBA ZIP [6-9] (centered)
*** DEMO MODE ***	If demo mode (bold and centered)
	Blank line
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm	Date and time report printed
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID.....: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
	Blank line
<u>CARD</u> <u>SEQ#</u> <u>TRAN</u> <u>ACCT#</u> <u>TOTAL</u>	Column text (other amount = TIP, CASH or SURCHARGE, omit 'BASE' if there are no other amounts)
	Line separator
VS NN SALE n-nnnn nn.nn	Card type, sequence number, transaction type, truncated account number total dollar amount
	Blank line
GRAND TOTAL nnn.nn	Grand total batch amount (centered and bold)
	Blank lines to advance above tear strip

Batch History Totals Report

This function prints a totals report for up to nine previously settled batches.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [PRINT].

[π] [π] [π]

TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
↓ ↓ ↓

Select TOTALS.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

Select BATCH. The EMP option appears if the employee ID processing is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the password if enabled and press [ENTER]. (local option).

[π] [π] [π]

CURRENT HISTORY
↓ ↓

Select HISTORY.

[π] [π] [π]

HISTORY REPORT
NO DATA TO PROCESS

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the idle prompt if no data is found for the batch on the first attempt.

[π] [π] [π]

CURRENT HISTORY
Printing...

Displays while printing.

[π] [π] [π]

TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
↓ ↓ ↓

Displays for 2 seconds when printing has completed and return to the TOTALS, TRAN, DETAIL selection menu.

[π] [π] [π]

Batch Totals History Report

The report repeats the identical information for the last eight closed batches.

1234567890123456789012345678901234567890	Comment
	Blank line
BATCH file contents	Heading
Current Batch #n	Current batch number
Batch Loc #0	First batch location and number
Open Batch nn/nn/nn nn:nn:nn	Date and time first transaction was done
Close Batch nn/nn/nn nn:nn:nn	Date and time batch was closed
Host Response: SETTLEMENT COMPLETE	Batch host response
Host Batch Ref: nnnnnnnnnnnnn	Host batch reference number
# of Credit Trans: n	Total number of transactions
Credit Close Amnt: \$nn.nn	Batch close amount
	Blank line
Batch Loc #1	Second batch location and number
Open Batch nn/nn/nn nn:nn:nn	Date and time second transaction was done
Close Batch nn/nn/nn nn:nn:nn	Date and time batch was closed
Host Response: SETTLEMENT COMPLETE	Batch host response
Host Batch Ref: nnnnnnnnnnnnn	Host batch reference number
# of Credit Trans: n	Total number of transactions
Credit Close Amnt: \$nn.nn	Batch close amount
	Blank line
Batch Loc #2	Third batch location and number
Loc 1 – Empty record	If batch is empty, batch location and contents are printed

Batch Summary Report By Card Type

This function prints a batch totals report by card type.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [PRINT].

[π] [π] [π]

TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
↓ ↓ ↓

Select TOTALS.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

Select CARD. The EMP option appears if the employee ID processing is enabled. If only one card type is in the open batch, this display does not change while the report prints.

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the password if enabled and press [ENTER] (local option).

[π] [π] [π]

CARDxxxxxx REPORT
NO DATA TO PROCESS

Displays for 2 seconds and return to the previous screen if no transactions exist on the first attempt.

[π] [π] [π]

Employee Totals Report

This function prints a totals report for all employees or for selected employees.

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press [PRINT] if employee ID processing is enabled.

```
TOTALS  TRAN  DETAIL
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Select TOTALS.

```
BATCH EMP  CARD
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Select EMP. The EMP option appears if the employee ID processing is enabled.

```
emp TOTALS  REPORT
NO DATA TO PROCESS
```

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds and return to idle prompt if no data is found for the batch on the first attempt.

```
emp TOTALS  REPORT
ENTER EMPLOYEE ID
```

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the employee ID or press [ENTER] for all employees. Displays if EMP selected above.

```
BATCH EMP  CARD
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

When report prints, terminal returns to this display screen.

Individual Employee ID Totals Report

1234567890123456789012345678901234567890

Comment

	Blank line
	Blank line
EMP ID NNN REPORT	Report type (centered)
	Blank line
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Name (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Street Address (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXX, XXX XXXXX-XXXX	DBA City, DBA State, DBA Zip[1-5], DBA ZIP [6-9] (centered)
*** DEMO MODE ***	If demo mode (bold and centered)
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm	Date and time report was printed
MERCHANT ID.....: NNNNNNNNNNNNNN	Merchant ID
** CREDIT RECORDS **	Report category heading
<u>SEQ#</u> <u>ACCT#</u> <u>TRAN</u> <u>TIP</u> <u>TOTAL</u>	Column text
NNN N-NNNN SALE n.nn nn.nn	Sequence number, truncated account number, transaction type, tip amount, total dollar amount
CARD TOTAL n.nn nn.nn	Card tip and total amount
	Blank line
\$ n.nn TIPS RECEIVED BY EMP nn	Total tip amount for EMP
	Blank line
X _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _	EMP signature line
	Blank lines to advance above tear strip

Employee ID Totals Report for All Employees

1234567890123456789012345678901234567890

Comment

	Blank line
	Blank line
<u>SERVER TOTALS REPORT</u>	Report type (centered)
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm	Date and time report was printed
<u>EMP ID</u> <u>TRANS</u> <u>TIP</u> <u>TOTAL</u>	Column text
n n n.nn nn.nn	EMP ID, number of transactions, total tip amount, total
n n n.nn nn.nn	transaction amount listed by EMP ID
	Blank line
TOTALS: n nn.nn nn.nn	Transaction number, tip and dollar amount totals for the batch
	Blank lines to advance above tear strip

Batch Item Detail Report

This function prints a detail report with totals for the entire batch.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE		
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm		

Press [PRINT].

[π] [π] [π]

TOTALS	TRAN	DETAIL
↓	↓	↓

Press the [p] key to select DETAIL.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH	EMP	CARD
↓	↓	↓

Select [BATCH]. The EMP option appears if employee ID reporting is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD		
----------------	--	--

Enter the password if enabled and press [ENTER]. (local option)

[π] [π] [π]

ALL	TAB	UNADJ
↓	↓	↓

Select ALL for all detail. This only appears if DETAIL selected above and Tab or Tip Processing is enabled; otherwise ALL is assumed.

[π] [π] [π]

PRINTING...		
-------------	--	--

Please wait for the report to print.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH	EMP	CARD
↓	↓	↓

Perform the following steps and repeat from ENTER EMP ID if an individual employee ID number was entered; otherwise press [CLEAR] to return to the idle state.

[π] [π] [π]

Batch Item Detail Report

1234567890123456789012345678901234567890

Comment

	Blank line
ITEM DETAIL REPORT	Report type (bold and centered)
	Blank line
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Name (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Street Address (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX, XXX XXXXX-XXXX	DBA City, DBA State, DBA Zip[1-5], DBA ZIP [6-9] (centered)
	Blank line
*** DEMO MODE ***	If demo mode (bold and centered)
	Blank line
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm	Date and time report printed
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID.....: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
	Blank line
SEQ: NNN VS SALE / SWIPED	Sequence number, card and transaction type, entry method
Acct: NNNNNNNNNNNNNNN Exp: NNNN	Card number and expiration date
INVOICE.....: NNNN	Invoice number
SERVER ID.....: N	Server ID
Date: mm/dd/yy Time: hh:mm	Date and time of transaction
AUTH CODE: NNNNN AVS: N CVV: N ACI: N	Authorization code, AVS response, CVV2 response, authorization character indicator
AMOUNT TAX TIP TOTAL	Transaction amount, tax amount, tip amount, total amount
nn.nn n.nn n.nn nn.nn	
	Blank line
GRAND TOTAL nnn.nn	Grand total batch amount (centered and bold)
	Blank lines to advance above tear strip

Employee Detail Report

This function prints a detail report for either all employees or a selected employee.

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press [PRINT] if Employee ID Processing is enabled.

```
TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [π] key to select DETAIL.

```
BATCH EMP CARD
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [π] key to select EMP. The EMP option appears if Employee ID Processing is enabled.

```
ALL TAB UNADJ
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [π] key to select ALL for all detail. This only appears if DETAIL selected above and tip or tab processing enabled; otherwise ALL is assumed.

```
DETAIL          REPORT
ENTER EMP ID
```

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the employee ID number or press [ENTER] to print a report for each employee ID represented in the batch. Displays if EMP selected above.

```
DETAIL          REPORT
NO DATA TO PROCESS
```

[π] [π] [π]

Displays for 2 seconds if there is no data based on the selections above.

```
DETAIL          REPORT
PRINTING...
```

[π] [π] [π]

Displays while printing if data is found.

Employee Detail Report

	Blank line
EMP NNN REPORT	Report type (bold and centered)
	Blank line
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Name (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Street Address (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXX, XXX XXXXX-XXXX	DBA City, DBA State, DBA Zip[1-5], DBA ZIP [6-9] (centered)
	Blank line
*** DEMO MODE ***	If demo mode (bold and centered)
	Blank line
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm PM	Date and time report printed
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID.....: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
** CREDIT RECORDS **	Report category heading
<u>SEQ#</u> <u>ACCT#</u> <u>TRAN</u> <u>TIP</u> <u>TOTAL</u>	Column text
NNN N-NNNN SALE n.nn nn.nn	Sequence number, truncated account number, transaction type, tip amount, total dollar amount
CARD TOTAL n.nn nn.nn	Card tip and total amount
	Blank line
\$ n.nn TIPS RECEIVED BY EMP nn	Total tip amount for EMP
	Blank line
X _	EMP signature line
	Blank lines to advance above tear strip

Open Tab Detail Report

This report lists the open tab detail. A report may be printed (in order entered) for all open tabs in the batch, for a single employee ID or for all employee IDs. This option will only be available if tab processing is enabled.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [PRINT] if open tab is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the [π] key to select DETAIL.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the [π] key to select BATCH or EMP. The EMP option appears if Employee ID Processing is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the password if enabled and press [ENTER]. (local option)

[π] [π] [π]

ALL TAB UNADJ
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the [π] key to select TAB. This is only displayed if tip or tab processing is enabled; otherwise ALL is assumed.

[π] [π] [π]

OPEN TAB REPORT
ENTER EMP ID

Enter the employee ID number or press [ENTER] for all employee IDs. Displays if EMP selected above.

[π] [π] [π]

PRINTING...

Displays while printing.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

After report prints, press [CLEAR] to exit function.

[π] [π] [π]

Open Tab Detail Report

1234567890123456789012345678901234567890

Comment

OPEN TAB DETAIL REPORT	Report type (bold and centered)
	Blank line
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Name (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Street Address (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXXX, XXX XXXXX-XXXX	DBA City, DBA State, DBA Zip[1-5], DBA ZIP [6-9] (centered)
	Blank line
*** DEMO MODE ***	If demo mode (bold and centered)
	Blank line
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm PM	Date and time report printed
	Blank line
MERCHANT ID.....: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
	Blank line
TAB#: nnn CARD:VS SERVER: n	Tab (sequence) number, card type, EMP ID
Acct: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnn Exp: nnnn	Card number and expiration date
RESP: APPROVAL nnnnn AMT: \$ nn.nn	Authorization code, transaction amount
	Blank line
END OF TABS	
	Blank lines to advance above tear strip

Missing Tip Report

This report lists the unadjusted tip detail for the batch (not-including debit), for an individual employee ID or for all employee IDs. This option will only be available if TIP PROCESSING is enabled.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [PRINT] if tip processing is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the [π] key to select DETAIL.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

Select BATCH or EMP. The EMP option appears if employee ID processing is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the password if enabled and press [ENTER]. (local option).

[π] [π] [π]

ALL TAB UNADJ
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the [π] key to select UNADJ. This screen is only displayed if tab or tip reporting is enabled; otherwise ALL is assumed.

[π] [π] [π]

DETAIL REPORT
ENTER EMPLOYEE ID

Enter the employee ID or press [ENTER] for all employee IDs. Displays if EMP selected above.

[π] [π] [π]

PRINTING...

Wait until report prints.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

[π] [π] [π]

Missing Tip Report

1234567890123456789012345678901234567890	Comment
	Blank line
	Blank line
MISSING TIP REPORT	Report type (bold and centered) if BATCH selected
emp nnnn UNADJUSTED REPORT	Report type (bold and centered); if EMP selected
	Blank line
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Name (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Street Address (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXX, XXX XXXX-XXXX	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
TID: nnnnnnnnnn	Terminal ID (centered)
BATCH: nnnnn	Batch identifier (centered)
*** DEMO MODE ***	If demo mode (bold and centered)
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm	Date and time of report
	Blank line
** CREDIT RECORDS **	Report category heading
<u>SEQ#</u> <u>ACCT#</u> <u>TRAN</u> <u>TIP</u> <u>TOTAL</u>	Column text
nnn n-nnnn SALE ----- nn.nn	Sequence number, truncated account number, transaction type, tip amount (if any), total dollar amount
	Blank line
END OF SERVERS	
	Blank lines to feed report past tear strip

Card Type Detail Report

This function prints a batch detail report (with totals) for a single card type reporting group or with all card type reporting groups on one report.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press [PRINT].

[π] [π] [π]

TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the [π] key to select DETAIL.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

Select CARD. The emp option appears if the employee ID processing is enabled.

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the password if enabled and press [ENTER]. (local option).

[π] [π] [π]

PRINTING...

Displays while printing.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH EMP CARD
↓ ↓ ↓

Press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

[π] [π] [π]

Card Type Detail Report

	Blank line
BATCH SUMMARY REPORT	Report type
	Blank line
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Name (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Street Address (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXX, XXX XXXXX-XXXX	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
*** DEMO MODE ***	If demo mode (bold and centered)
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm	Date and time report was printed
MERCHANT ID.....: nnnnnnnnnnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID
	Blank line
<u>CARD</u> <u>SEQ#</u> <u>TRAN</u> <u>ACCT #</u> <u>TOTAL</u>	Column text
VS NN SALE n-nnnn nn.nn	Card type, sequence number, transaction type, truncated account number total dollar amount
VS TOTALS ===== \$ nn.nn	Card type total amount
	Blank line
MC NN SALE n-nnnn nn.nn	Card type, sequence number, transaction type, truncated account number total dollar amount
MC TOTALS ===== \$ nn.nn	Card type total amount
	Blank line
GRAND TOTAL n.nn	Grand total batch amount (centered and bold)
	Blank lines to advance above tear strip

Reprint

Reprint Last Transaction

The reprint function will allow reprinting of the last transaction. The sequence number (if applicable), invoice number and last 16 digits of the account number will be displayed for confirmation.

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
```

Press [PRINT].

[π] [π] [π]

```
TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
  ↓   ↓   ↓
```

Press the [π] key to select TRAN.

[π] [π] [π]

```
REPRINT
PRINTING NOT ALLOWED
```

Displays and return to the idle prompt if print receipts is disabled.

[π] [π] [π]

```
INV SEQ LAST
  ↓   ↓   ↓
```

Press the right [π] key to select LAST.

[π] [π] [π]

```
TRAN          REPRINT
NO DATA TO PROCESS
```

Prompt is displayed for two seconds if there is no transaction to print on the first attempt.

[π] [π] [π]

```
nnn:  INV  nnnnnnnnnn
PRINT SALE? $nnnnn.nn
```

Terminal will display sequence number, invoice number, transaction type and transaction dollar amount. Press [ENTER] to transaction information is correct or [BACK SPACE] if it is not and terminal will return to the INV, SEQ, LAST display.

[π] [π] [π]

```
VS          SALE
PRINT CUST COPY?
```

If you wish to reprint the merchant receipt copy, press [BACK SPACE], if you wish to reprint the customer receipt copy, press [ENTER]. The display does not change as the copy prints.

[π] [π] [π]

```
INV SEQ LAST
  ↓   ↓   ↓
```

Please press [CLEAR] key to return to the idle prompt.

[π] [π] [π]

Reprint Selected Transaction

The reprint function will allow reprinting of any transaction in the current batch. The sequence number (if applicable), invoice number and last 16 digits of the account number will be displayed for confirmation.

```
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
```

Press [PRINT] key.

[π] [π] [π]

```
REPRINT
PRINTINGNOTALLOWED
```

Displays and return to the idle prompt if PRINT RECEIPTS is disabled.

[π] [π] [π]

```
TOTALS TRAN DETAIL
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

Press the middle [π] key.

[π] [π] [π]

```
INV SEQ LAST
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

Select INV to find a transaction by invoice number or select SEQ to find a transaction by sequence number.

[π] [π] [π]

```
TRAN          REPORT
ENTER INVOICE #
```

Enter the invoice number. This is displayed if INV selected above.

[π] [π] [π]

```
TRAN          REPORT
ENTER SEQ #
```

Enter the sequence number. This is displayed if SEQ selected above.

[π] [π] [π]

```
nnn:  INV nnnnnnnnnn
PRINT SALE? $nnnnn.nn
```

Terminal will display sequence number, invoice number, transaction type and transaction dollar amount. Press [ENTER] to transaction information is correct or [BACK SPACE] if it is not and terminal will return to the INV, SEQ, LAST display.

[π] [π] [π]

```
VS          SALE
PRINT CUST COPY?
```

If you wish to reprint the merchant receipt copy, press [BACK SPACE], if you wish to reprint the customer receipt copy, press [ENTER]. The display does not change as the copy prints.

[π] [π] [π]

```
INV SEQ LAST
  ↓      ↓      ↓
```

Please press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.


[π] [π] [π]

MANAGEMENT

Batch Clear

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press  .

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter the password if enabled and press [ENTER].

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select MGMT.

BATCH TEST DEMO
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Select BATCH.

RECORDS USED: nnn
REMAINING: nnn

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER]. The total number of records used and the approximate number of records that remain are displayed.

SETTLE TIME: hhmm
LAST: hhmm mmddy

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER]. The settle time is displayed, in military time. 'hhmm' = auto settle time or 'N/A' if disabled. 'hhmm mmddy' = the time and date of the last successful settlement (auto or operator initiated)

LAST SETTLE RESPONSE
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to proceed. The settle response display text is displayed from the last settlement attempt (regardless of whether the settlement was successful or not).

CURRENT BATCH: nnnnn

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to proceed or [VOID] to clear the batch. The internal batch identifier for the current batch (stored) is displayed.

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Enter password enabled and press [ENTER]. Displays if VOID pressed in previous step.

BATCH CLEARED


Displays for 2 seconds and returns to the LOCK, MGMT, SETUP screen.

[π] [π] [π]

Demo Mode

This function is used to enable and disable demo mode.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press  .

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the password if enabled and press [ENTER]. (local option)

[π] [π] [π]

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the middle [π] key to choose MGMT.

[π] [π] [π]

BATCH TEST DEMO
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the right [π] key to choose DEMO.

[π] [π] [π]

DEMO MODE=OFF
PRESS # TO CHANGE

Press the [#] key to turn demo mode on or off.

[π] [π] [π]

MUST CLOSE BATCH TO
CHANGE MODES

Press [ENTER] to return to idle menu. This is displayed if an open batch exists when attempting to enable or disable demo mode.

[π] [π] [π]

CHANGE ACCEPTED

This screen displays for 2 seconds.

[π] [π] [π]

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

Please press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

[π] [π] [π]

Lock Mode

The lock function is used to temporarily disable the terminal until the assigned level password (or higher) is entered. The default password of [1] [2] [3] [1] [2] [3] is the used here.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press  .

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Enter the password and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the left [π] key to select LOCK.

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD
TO UNLOCK TERMINAL

The terminal keyboard is currently locked! Key in the password to unlock and return to the idle prompt.

[π] [π] [π]

SETUP

Update Host Options

The host setup function is used to update or refresh host options such as the dial prefix, primary and secondary terminal phone numbers.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press  .

[π] [π] [π]

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

[π] [π] [π]

HOST LOCAL REVIEW
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the left [π] key to select HOST for host setup.

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER DIAL PREFIX

If the terminal is connected to a phone line that requires a prefix to reach an outside line, key in the prefix and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

PRIMARY PHONE #
NNNNNNNNNN

Enter the primary processing phone number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

SECONDARY PHONE #
NNNNNNNNNN

Enter the secondary or backup processing phone number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

PRIMARY CLOSE #
NNNNNNNNNN

Enter the primary close hone number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

SECONDARY CLOSE #
NNNNNNNNNN

Enter the secondary or backup phone number and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

CHANGE ACCEPTED

This screen displays whenever a setting is successfully changed.

[π] [π] [π]

Setup Passwords

This function is used to set password protection on terminal transactions and functions.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press  .

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

HOST LOCAL REVIEW
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select LOCAL.

DIAL PASS OPTIONS
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select PASS for local password security setup.

PASSWORD LEVELS
↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to choose LEVELS. This allows you to set password protection on terminal procedures and functions. The option accessed by pressing the left key has been disabled.

SALE: NONE
PRESS # TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [#] key to require default password entry to perform a credit card sale transaction. Press [ENTER] to scroll to the next setting without changing the setting on credit card sale.

DEBIT: NONE
PRESS # TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press the [#] key to require default password entry to perform a debit card sale transaction. Press [ENTER] to scroll to the next setting without changing the setting on credit card sale. This function allows you to set required default password entry to perform the following transactions: offline sale, return, authorization only, open tab, close tab, check, settle, edit, add tip and void.

BATCH REVIEW: NONE
PRESS # TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Pressing the [#] key also allows you to set required default password entry to perform: batch review, batch reports, emp review, emp reports, reprint, dup trans, adjust, manual entry, lock, management and setup. Press [ENTER] to scroll through the settings.

Local Dial Options

Dial Type

This feature allows the terminal to be set to either tone or pulse dialing during transaction processing.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press  .

[π] [π] [π]

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

[π] [π] [π]

HOST LOCAL REVIEW
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the middle [π] key to select LOCAL.

[π] [π] [π]

DIAL PASS OPTIONS
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the left [π] key to select DIAL.

[π] [π] [π]

DIAL TYPE=TONE
PRESS # TO CHANGE

Either press [ENTER] to continue or press the [#] key to choose either tone or pulse dialing.

[π] [π] [π]

Local Printer Options

Disable Printer

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press  .

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

HOST LOCAL REVIEW
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the middle [π] key to select LOCAL.

DIAL PASS OPTIONS
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select OPTIONS.

PRINTER TIP OTHER
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the left [π] key to select PRINTER. If printer type = 00 for no printer, the PRINTER option should not be available.

PRINTER=ON
PRESS # TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue or [#] key to choose ON or OFF. Subsequent host updates will reset this option to the host PRINTER option value.

2ND RECEIPT DELAY:05
ENTER NEW TO CHANGE

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to continue or key in number of seconds to wait before printing second thermal receipt copy and press [ENTER]. Displays if a thermal printer is attached (00 = No wait, 99 = Wait 99 seconds before printing). Default to 05 seconds at startup.

Tip Options

Auto Gratuity % Tip Guideline

When activated, this procedure automatically adds a pre-determined tip amount to any transaction that requires a tip. The tip amount is a percentage of the affected transaction. The percentage can be set at the time the procedure is activated. Please follow the steps below to activate the procedure and set the tip amount.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press  .

[π] [π] [π]

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

[π] [π] [π]

HOST LOCAL REVIEW
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the middle [π] key to select LOCAL.

[π] [π] [π]

DIAL PASS OPTIONS
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the right [π] key to select OPTIONS.

[π] [π] [π]

PRINTER TIP OTHER
↓ ↓ ↓

Select TIP. If Printer Type = '00' for no printer, the PRINTER option should not be available. If TIP Processing is disabled, the TIP option should not be available.

[π] [π] [π]

AUTO GRATUITY = nn%
ENTER NEW TO CHANGE

Either press [ENTER] to keep the displayed value or key in new automatic tip gratuity percent (00% disables auto gratuity confirmation) and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

TIP GUIDELINE = OFF
ENTER NEW TO CHANGE

Either press [ENTER] to keep displayed value or press [#] key to choose ON or OFF.

[π] [π] [π]

TIP GUIDELINE #1=15%
ENTER NEW TO CHANGE

Either press [ENTER] to continue or key in new gratuity guideline percentage and press [ENTER]. This is displayed if ON option was selected in the TIP GUIDELINE screen.

[π] [π] [π]

TIP GUIDELINE #2=20%
ENTER NEW TO CHANGE

Either press [ENTER] to continue or key in new gratuity guideline percentage. This is displayed if ON option selected in the TIP GUIDELINE screen.

[π] [π] [π]

Idle Time-out/Key Beep

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press  .

[π] [π] [π]

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

[π] [π] [π]

HOST LOCAL REVIEW
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the middle [π] key to select LOCAL.

[π] [π] [π]

DIAL PASS OPTIONS
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the right [π] key to select OPTIONS.

[π] [π] [π]

PRINTER TIP OTHER
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the left [π] key to select OTHER.

[π] [π] [π]

KEY BEEP=ON PRESS
TO CHANGE

Either press [ENTER] to keep current setting or press the [#] key to choose ON or OFF.

[π] [π] [π]

IDLE TIMEOUT=00 ENTER
NEW TO CHANGE


Either press [ENTER] to return to previous menu or key in a new time-out in seconds (zero for no time-out - default). The idle time-out is the number of seconds of inactivity allowed (keyboard, modem, check reader, PIN pad, etc.) before the terminal returns to the idle menu.

[π] [π] [π]

Setup Report

This function is used to print the current status of applicable host and local options.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

Press  .

[π] [π] [π]

ENTER PASSWORD

Key in the setup password (if enabled) and press [ENTER].

[π] [π] [π]

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

[π] [π] [π]

HOST LOCAL REVIEW
↓ ↓ ↓

Press the right [π] key to select REVIEW.

[π] [π] [π]

PRINT VIEW
↓ ↓

Press the left [π] key to select PRINT. If printer type = 00 for no printer, press the right [π] key to choose VIEW and follow the procedure that begins on the next page.

[π] [π] [π]

TECH SPECS
PRINTING

If PRINT was chosen, wait for report to print.

[π] [π] [π]

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

When the report finishes printing, press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.


[π] [π] [π]

View Setup

This function is used to display the current status of applicable host and local options.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press  .

ENTER PASSWORD

[π] [π] [π]

Key in the setup password (if enabled) and press [ENTER].

LOCK MGMT SETUP
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select SETUP.

HOST LOCAL REVIEW
↓ ↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to select REVIEW.

PRINT VIEW
↓ ↓

[π] [π] [π]

Press the right [π] key to choose VIEW.

APP L3CRD31
V3.1g NN/NN/NN

[π] [π] [π]

The terminal will display the application name, version number and completion date. Press [ENTER] to scroll through the other settings.

MERCH ID
NNNNNNNNNN

[π] [π] [π]

The merchant ID number programmed into the terminal is displayed. Press [ENTER] to move on to the next screen.

TERMINAL ID
NNNNNNNN

[π] [π] [π]

The eight-digit terminal ID number will display. Press [ENTER] to move on to the next screen.

NEW BATCH #
N

[π] [π] [π]

The batch number is displayed. Press [ENTER] to move on to the next screen.

LAST APP LOAD DATE
NN/NN/NN

[π] [π] [π]

INDUSTRY TYPE
RESTAURANT

[π] [π] [π]

PREPRINT : YES

[π] [π] [π]

PREDIAL : YES

[π] [π] [π]

APP L3CRD31
V3.1g NN/NN/NN

[π] [π] [π]

The date of the most recent terminal download is displayed. Press [ENTER] to move on the next screen.

The type of transactions the terminal is programmed to accept now displays. Press [ENTER] to move on to the next screen.

This display allows you to confirm if the preprint function has been activated. Press [ENTER] to move on to the next screen.

This display allows you to confirm if the predial function has been activated. Press [ENTER] to move on to the first screen.

The terminal will display the application name, version number and completion date. Either press [ENTER] to scroll through the other settings or press [CLEAR] to return to the idle prompt.

Setup Report Sample

SETUP REPORT	Transaction type (bold and centered)
	Blank line
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Name (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	DBA Street Address (centered)
XXXXXXXXXXXXX, XXX XXXXX-XXXX	DBA City, DBA State, DBA ZIP (centered)
	Blank line
DATE: mm/dd/yy TIME: hh:mm PM	Date and time of settled to the host
	Blank line
ROM VERSION..... : OS n.n	Terminal ROM version
APPLICATION VERSION: L3CRD31	Terminal application
APPLICATION TYPE....: RETAIL	Terminal application type
HOST PROVIDER.....: nnn	Host information
MODEM SPEED.....: 1200	Terminal modem setting
TELECOM INFO:	
DIAL MODE : T	Dial mode setting t=tone p=pulse
DIAL SPEED: 1200	Modem dial speed
PREDIAL: Y	Predial setting
PREFIX?: Y 9	Dial prefix setting
<u>DOWNLOAD INFORMATION</u>	
LAST DOWNLOAD DATE: nn/nn/nn	Date application was downloaded
<u>OPTIONS</u>	
AUTO CLOSE.....: OFF	Auto close setting
AUTO REPORT..... : OFF	Auto report setting
RESPONSE DISP TIME: NN SECONDS	Response time setting
SERVER ID.....: ON	Server ID setting
PRE-PRINT ENABLED.....: YES	Pre-print setting
ALLOW MANUAL ENTRY.: ON	Manual entry setting
DEFAULT CARDSWIPE....: SALE KEY	Cardswipe transaction default
12 HOUR CLOCK..... : ON	Display clock setting
TAX PROMPT OVERRIDE: OFF	Tax prompt override setting
AMEX SPLIT DIAL ENABLED: NO	American Express split dial setting
DISCOVER SPLIT DIAL ENABLED: NO	Discover split dial setting
<u>ATM/DEBIT OPTIONS</u>	
PINPAD TYPE.....: 3	Pinpad setting
CASHBACK..... : ON	Cash back setting
CASHBACK MINIMUM.....: \$nn.nn	Cash back minimum amount setting
CASHBACK MAXIMUM....: \$nn.nn	Cash back maximum amount setting
TRANS. FEE.....: YES	Transaction setting

PURCH ONLY AMT.....: \$n.nn	Purchase only amount
CASHBACK AMT.....: \$n.nn	Cash back amount setting
<u>HOST INFORMATION</u>	
PRIMARY PHONE #.....: nnnnnnnnn	Primary phone number
SECONDARY PHONE #...: nnnnnnn	Secondary phone number
PRIMARY CLOSE #.....: nnnnnnn	Primary close phone number
SECONDARY CLOSE #...: nnnnnnn	Secondary close phone number
MERCHANT ID.....: nnnnnnnnn	Merchant ID number
TERMINAL ID.....: nnnnnnn	Terminal ID number

LOCAL FUNCTIONS

ENTER 40: View Last Three Responses from Host

To view the host responses (approved, declined, etc.) from the most recent three transaction attempts, follow the procedures below.

Display Message

Operator Action

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE
mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER].

FUNCTION
_

[π] [π] [π]

Key in [4][0] and press [ENTER] to view the most recent response from the host.

ENTER PASSWORD -

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

If prompted, key in the password (the default is [1][2][3][1][2][3]) and press [ENTER].

HOST RESPONSE 1:
Approved XXXXXX

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to view the second most recent response from the host.

HOST RESPONSE 2:
Approved XXXXXX

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to view the third most recent response from the host.

HOST RESPONSE 3:
Approved XXXXXX

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER] to again view the most recent response or press [CLEAR] to escape.

ENTER 44: View Last Three Batches

This procedure allows information about the three most recent batches to be reviewed; the displayed information includes: date, total, and number of items.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
--

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER].

FUNCTION -

[π] [π] [π]

Key in [4][4] and press [ENTER].

ENTER PASSWORD -

[π] [π] [π]

(optional)

If prompted, key in the password (the default is [1][2][3][1][2][3]) and press [ENTER]. (This prompt is optional.)

1 \$ 0.00/000
01/01/00 00:00

[π] [π] [π]

The following information will display batch number, batch total, number of items, date and time batch closed. Press [ENTER] to view additional batch information.

ENTER 97: View Application Date

To view the last revision date of the program file currently loaded into the LinkPoint 3000 terminal, please follow the procedure below.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
--

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER].

FUNCTION -

[π] [π] [π]

Key in [9][7] and press [ENTER].

Built at: XX:XX:XX ddd mmm dd yyyy

[π] [π] [π]

The terminal will display the version date of the program file currently loaded into the terminal.

ENTER 98: Program Name and Prompts File Revision Information

To review the name and the last revision date of the prompts file program currently loaded into the LinkPoint 3000 terminal, please follow the procedure below.

SWIPE CARD FOR SALE mmm-dd-yy ddd hh:mm
--

[π] [π] [π]

Press [ENTER].

FUNCTION

[π] [π] [π]

Key in [9][8] and press [ENTER].

Prm Name/Date L3CRD31 05/05/02

[π] [π] [π]

The terminal will display the name and last revision date of the prompts file program currently loaded into the terminal.

APPENDIX A — ERROR CONDITIONS

The host can return an error code or error text on any host response. The terminal must ensure that the returned code and/or text are displayed in order to facilitate problem resolution. The terminal should retry or abort any transaction in progress unless a '00' host error code is received.

APPROVAL	Approved for capture in batch
APPROVAL	Approved (non capture)
	Please Note: Authorized transaction may not be captured in terminal's batch memory if this response code appears.
AVS ACCEPTED	AVS request
BAD PROCESSING CODE	Bad processing code
BELOW FLOOR LIMIT	Below floor limit
COMM ERROR	Communications error
CVV2 DECLINED	Association indicated the transaction was not approved due to a mismatch of the CVV2 value, but would have been approved had the CVV2 values matched.
DECLINED	Account wdrl limits exceeded Auth request declined bf Card closed Card wdrl amt. limits exceeded Card wdrl limits exceeded Inquiry declined Insufficient funds Invalid PIN Invalid transaction for card Restricted card status prohibits all Restricted card status prohibits debits Restricted card status prohibits monetary Switch declined transaction Switch wdrl amt. limits exceeded Switch wdrl limits exceeded Withdrawal denied Withdrawal usage limits exceeded
DOWNLOAD FAILED	Retry download

EXPIRED CARD	Invalid expiration date
HOLD - CALL CTR	Capture status account
INV ACCT NUM	Access card not on file
	Account number not entered
	Acct not on file
	Bad track 2 data
	Invalid account number
	Invalid card member number
	Invalid card number
	Record not found
INV AMT	Invalid amount
INV EXP DATE	Invalid expiration date
INV TERMINAL	Terminal not found
INV TRN TYPE	Rejecting pre-auths in 0320 msg.
INVALID TERM ID	Terminal not found
INVALID TERM IF	Terminal not active
INVL ARRIVAL-DT	Non numeric arrival date
INVL CHECKOUT DT	Non-numeric check-out date
INVL FOLIO NBR	Non-numeric folio number
INVL ROOM RATE	Non-numeric room rate
INVL TERMINAL ID	Record not found
INVL ACCT 1	Check merchant entitlement
INVL ACCT 2	Four-day grace period exceeded for expired card-during EDC batch settlement
	Invalid account/date
	Sales date is in the future
INVL AMT 3	Zero amount
INVL MER ID	Invalid merchant ID
	Restricted merchant transaction
INVL SETTLE 4	Resend batch
	Taps batch or bcf error
INVLID MAC	Invalid MAC code
MAX TIP \$999/ PLEASE RETRY	Tip exceeded \$999.99
	Destination unavailable
	Error on message
	Facility unavailable
	Invalid edited data
	Invalid message type received

	Line to switch not operational
	Prohibited transaction
	Request not recognized
	Scheduled down-no stand-in
	Swap path not found
	Swap undelivered message
	Switch unavailable commanded down
	Switch unavailable hard down
	Switch unavailable not signed on
	Terminal context record locked
	Time-out expired
	Unrecognized error from switch
	Unscheduled down-no stand-in
REFERRAL	Please call card issuer
	Please dial following number
REFERRAL-INV TR1	More than 76 characters in track 1
RESEND BATCH	In response to batch details
SERV NOT ALLOWED	Group security violation
	Invalid card limit
	Invalid edited data
	Invalid merchant auth method
	Invalid merchant card type
	Invalid merchant card type limit
	Invalid service
	ON/2 security violation
	Restricted card status prohibits all
	Restricted card status prohibits debits
	Restricted card status prohibits monetary
	Switch group violation
SYSTEM PROBLEM	No disk space
	Process aborted

APPENDIX B—PROMPTS, ERROR MESSAGES AND TROUBLESHOOTING

This appendix explains the meaning of the different terminal prompts.

ABORT TRANSACTION	Message displays either when the user cancels a transaction during processing or when terminal is unable to reach the host computer to complete a transaction.
ALREADY VOIDED	The selected item in the batch was already voided.
APPROVAL CODE	This message prompts for the entry of the authorization code during a ticket only transaction. Enter the authorization code received earlier to continue with the transaction.
BATCH FULL CLOSE NOW!	This message displays just before the terminal buffer is completely full to prevent the terminal from locking up; instructs the user to close the batch before being able to continue.
BATCH SUMMARY	Displays during the printing of a report that lists: individual bankcard transactions and totals, credit card transactions and totals and ATM/debit card totals.
CASH BACK AMOUNT	This message prompts after YES is selected at the CASH BACK? prompt.
CLEAR TO RESUME	This is the main menu display in the boot mode. Press the [CLEAR] key to exit the function.
COMM ERROR #55	Displays when the terminal attempts to dial out and it cannot make a connection. Please confirm that the terminal telephone line is in working order.
CONNECTED	This message displays when the terminal connects to the host computer.
CREATING PROMPTS	Displays during initialization of the terminal after a full or a partial download.
DECLINED	The card has been declined by the host computer.

DIALING...	This message is displayed when the terminal begins dial out.
ENTER LAST 4 DIGITS	Card fraud protection prompt displayed after a card is swiped.
ENTER PASSWORD	This message prompts when a password is required to access a function or transaction.
ERROR CHECK PIN PAD	Terminal is not registering the PIN pad. Confirm that unit is properly installed to the terminal.
ERROR CHECK PIN PAD	A PIN pad is not connected to the terminal or it is not activated. An ATM/debit sale cannot be performed without a PIN pad.
ERROR CHECK PRINTER	User may not have a printer or it may not be installed properly. Check that the printer is securely connected to the back of the terminal, that the power is turned on, and that it is enabled via the terminal setup.
EXP DATE (MMYY)	This message prompts after the keyed entry of the cardholder's account number.
EXPIRED CARD	The expiration date sent with the authorization request indicates that the card has expired. If the card is not expired, the terminal may be programmed with the incorrect date.
IMPRINT NOW	This message prompts after the card number and the expiration date are entered. Press [ENTER] to continue the transaction.
INVALID AMOUNT	The terminal allows a maximum amount entry of nine positions including the decimal point (\$123456.78) or a minimum amount entry of \$.01. The amount entered does not fall within these parameters.
INVALID CARD NUMBER	The cardholder's account information transmitted to the host computer is not valid (i.e., sending incorrect magnetic stripe data).

INVALID DATE	The expiration date entered was formatted incorrectly. The correct date format is MMY (i.e., for JANUARY 2002, 0102 should be entered).
MISMATCHED DIGITS	The four digits entered do not match the last four digits encoded on the magnetic stripe of the card swiped through the terminal. Attempt to enter the last four digits again. If there is no match, the terminal will return to the READY prompt.
MUST AUTHORIZE FIRST	This message prompts for approximately three seconds each time the [X] [OFFLINE] key is pressed.
MUST PERFORM FULL DOWNLOAD FIRST	This message prompts when a partial download is requested but the application is not yet loaded into the terminal.
NO CARRIER	This message displays when a modem/RS232 error occurs.
NO DATA TO PROCESS	The terminal displays this message when it cannot find the information requested (i.e., there is no item number 99 in the current batch). Try a different item number.
NO DATA TO PROCESS	Message displays when there are no transactions in the current batch.
NO LINE	The terminal cannot detect a telephone line connection. Make sure that the telephone cord is securely plugged into the terminal.
NO SERVICE	Either a card has been swiped or an account number entered that the terminal is not programmed to accept. Try the transaction again or ask for another form of payment.
NO TRANSACTIONS	Message displays when a close function was attempted on a batch with no transactions.
PRINTER REQUIRED	This message prompts when the [ATM/DEBIT] key is pressed but a printer is not connected/enabled. A printer must be connected, enabled, and powered on to perform an ATM/debit sale.

RECEIVING...	This message displays when the terminal is receiving a response from the host computer via modem.
SERV NOT ALLOWED	Optional service is not enabled.
SWIPE CARD	User attempted (1) to key in an ATM/debit sale; ATM/debit sales must be swiped or (2) to key in a transaction when the terminal is downloaded with the keyed parameter disabled.
SWIPE CARD FOR SALE	The line 1 default idle prompt displays the number of transactions left in the batch.
TYPE IN YOUR PIN PRESS ENTER KEY	Prompts on the PIN pad while it waits for the customer to enter his/her PIN number.
UNREADABLE CARD	The magnetic stripe of the swiped card may be damaged or the card reader may be obstructed or otherwise requires cleaning.
WAITING FOR LINE	Message displays when terminal is trying to access a valid phone line to complete a transaction. Confirm that the terminal is connected to the phone line properly.

APPENDIX C—ADDITIONAL TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDELINES

This appendix identifies some additional problems that may be encountered and the actions necessary to correct them.

DISPLAY PANEL MALFUNCTION

If the LinkPoint 3000 displays incorrect information, such as an unreadable message or nothing at all, it may have a power problem or be a defective terminal. The terminal application may not have been properly loaded.

KEYPAD MALFUNCTION

Check the display panel. If it displays the wrong characters or nothing at all, refer to the section *Display Panel Malfunction* above. Press several keys; a beep should be heard each time. If the “beep” works, make sure the correct data is being entered.

PRINTER MALFUNCTION

Check that the printer paper is properly loaded in the printer. The printer will not operate unless a roll of paper is correctly installed. Check the terminal for signs of power failure. Press the [CLEAR] key and try the operation again; an improper command may have been used.

GLOSSARY

AC	Alternating Current is used as a primary source of power by AC adapters and power supplies.
AC Adapter	A device that converts AC electrical current to a different DC current so that it can be used by a particular device.
Account Number	(1) A unique series or group of digits used to numerically identify each cardholder. (2) The unique identification number assigned to the account of a specific party, within a given institution.
Alphanumeric	Capable of using both alphabetic and numeric characters, as in a display panel, keypad, or a computer keypad.
Application	A software program designed with special codes, stored in the memory for a specific purpose or customer.
ATM/Debit	A monetary function that transfers funds from the cardholder's ATM/debit account.
Authorization	The process used by card issuers to approve or decline a transaction request.
Authorization Only	A nonmonetary function that verifies the availability of the cardholder's credit and reserves the authorized amount.
Baud	Signaling speed equal to the number of signal events per second.
Card Reader	The slot on the terminal that automatically reads the magnetic stripe or bar code on the back of an encoded card (bankcard or credit card).
Carrier	A frequency signal or tone sent over the telephone or communication line and modulated by the modem to transmit/receive data.

Cash Back Maximum	Downloaded feature to establish the maximum amount of cash back allowed by the merchant.
Cash Back Minimum	Downloaded feature to establish the minimum amount of cash back allowed by the merchant.
Close (host response)	The batch was successfully closed and the transactions sent to the host computer.
Close Batch	A monetary transaction used to summarize the day's transactions for electronic deposit to the merchant's bank account.
CPU	Central Processing Unit. The brain of the computer or terminal that controls either directly or indirectly every function and device associated with the computer/terminal.
Data	Information prepared in a particular format for use by the terminal or host computer for a specific transaction or operation.
Display	The small screen on the terminal that displays messages to guide users through different operations and to alert users when errors or problems occur.
EPROM	Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory. A type of memory chip permanently stored in the terminal. Contains the standard application, operating system, and fixed prompts.
File	A collection of related data.
Force (host response)	There was a discrepancy between the transactions sent to the host and the transactions stored in the host computer. The terminal forced closure, the batch was successfully closed, and the transactions sent to the host computer.
Fraud Control	Measures taken to prevent unauthorized use of a credit or debit card.

Host Computer	A computer used to process credit card and debit card transactions.
Keypad	The key panel used for entering data and performing operations.
Manual Transaction	Transaction using account information entered from the keypad rather than automatic reading devices such as the card reader.
Merchant ID Number	A number used by merchants to identify themselves to the host computer at their bank or financial institution.
(Off line) Ticket Only	A monetary transaction used to initiate a deposit in two situations: (1) following an authorization only transaction, and (2) to complete a transaction initiated by voice authorization also known as “force” or “post authorization.”
PIN	Personal Identification Number. A four- to sixteen-digit confidential code or electronic signature used by the card holder to identify themselves to the host computer as the proper user of a credit or debit card.
PIN pad	A Personal Identification Number pad is an encrypted input device used for entering a private identification code that validates a transaction.
Reprint	A nonmonetary transaction used to print a duplicate copy of a captured transaction before the batch is closed.
Return	A monetary transaction used to reverse a previous day’s transaction. This transaction credits the cardholder’s account.
Review	A nonmonetary function used to review and print individual items and batch totals as an aid in reconciling a given day’s transactions.

Sale	A monetary transaction that initiates the transfer of funds. A sale can be transacted either by card swipe (magnetic card reader) or by manual entry of the information.
Scroll	To move text across a display screen.
Serial Port	A connector used to communicate with host computers, other terminals and printers.
Swipe	The action of sliding a card through a terminal's card reader.
Telephone Line Cord	A type of cord with modular plugs for connecting a device to another device or outlet.
Terminal	A device used to perform transactions. The transactions are processed by the terminal itself or by a host computer. These devices have a display panel, keypad, card reader and are used to enter transaction information.
Track 1 Data	The information stored on track 1 of the card's magnetic stripe includes the cardholder's name, account number, expiration date and security data.
Track 2 Data	American Bankers Association information stored on track 2 of the card's magnetic stripe. Includes the cardholder's account number, expiration date and security data.
12 Hour Clock	Downloaded feature that allows the display of time in 12 or 24 hour format.
Void	A monetary transaction used to eliminate a prior "current batch" sale. A receipt is generated to be included with that day's drafts and tickets.

INDEX

A

ABORT TRANSACTION.....	283
AC.....	288
AC Adapter.....	288
Account Number.....	288
Add Tip.....	222
Address Verification Service (AVS).....	17, 77
Response Codes.....	88, 176
Adjustments.....	215
Alphanumeric.....	288
ALREADY VOIDED.....	283
Application.....	288
APPROVAL.....	280
APPROVAL CODE.....	283
ATM/Debit.....	7, 97
ATM/Debit.....	288
Auth Only.....	9, 171, 288
Authorization.....	288
Auto Close.....	78
Auto Close Batch.....	214
Auto Tip Guidelines.....	269
Automatic Gratuity.....	18
AVS ACCEPTED.....	280

B

BAD PROCESSING CODE.....	280
Bar Tab.....	17
Batch History Review.....	225
Batch History Totals Report.....	242
Batch Item Detail Report.....	249
BATCH SUMMARY.....	283
Batch Summary Report By Card Type.....	244
Batch Totals Review.....	224
Batch/Employee Detail Review.....	232
Baud.....	288
BELOW FLOOR LIMIT.....	280
Boot Mode Functions.....	24
Boot Mode Passwords.....	24
Clear Memory.....	31
Cold Boot.....	25
Date and Time Setup.....	26
Model Number.....	30
PIN pad Port Setup.....	29
Printer Port Setup.....	27
RS232 Port Setup.....	28

C

Card Reader.....	288
Card Type Detail Report.....	257
Card Type Detail Review.....	238
Card Type Totals Review.....	227
Card Verification Value (CVV2).....	13
Response Codes.....	88, 176

Carrier.....	288
CASH BACK AMOUNT.....	283
Cashback Maximum.....	289
Cashback Minimum.....	289
Check.....	17
Check.....	8
Check.....	187
Clear Batch.....	261
CLEAR TO RESUME.....	283
Close.....	8
Close (Host Response).....	289
Close Bar Tab.....	218
Close Batch.....	289
Close Batch.....	210
Close Batch Report.....	213
COMM ERR #55.....	283
COMM ERROR.....	280
CONNECTED!.....	283
CPU.....	289
Customer ID Number.....	290
CVV2 DECLINED.....	280

D

Data.....	289
DECLINED.....	280
DECLINED.....	283
Demo Mode.....	263
Dial String Codes.....	76
DIALING.....	284
Disable Printers.....	268
Display.....	289
DISPLAY PANEL MALFUNCTION.....	287
DOWNLOAD FAILED.....	280
Download Parameters.....	58
Download Procedures.....	45
Direct PC-to-POS Download.....	51, 54
POS-to-POS.....	56
Telephone Download.....	45, 49

E

EBT Balance Inquiry.....	121
EBT Force Purchase.....	115
EBT Force Return.....	118
EBT Purchase.....	102, 106
EBT Return.....	112
EBT/Debit.....	102
E-Commerce Transaction.....	18, 85, 163, 173
Employee Detail Report.....	251
Employee Totals Report.....	246
Employee Totals Review.....	229
ENTER LAST 4 DIGITS.....	284
ENTER PASSWORD.....	284
EPROM.....	289
ERROR CHECK PIN PAD.....	284
ERROR CHECK PRINTER.....	284
EXPIRED CARD.....	281

EXPIRED CARD	284
EXPIRY DATE? (MMYY)	284

F

File	289
Force (Host Response)	289
Fraud Control	289

G

Getting Started	2
Gift Card 17, 124, 127, 130, 133, 136, 139, 142, 145, 147	
Glossary	288

H

HOLD-CALL CTR	281
Host Assigned Error Codes	280
Host Computer	290
Host Parameters and Options	77

I

Idle Time-Out/Key Beep	271
IMPRINT REQUIRED	284
Installation	3
Introduction	1
INV ACCT NUM	281
INV AMT	281
INV EXP DATE	281
INV TERMINAL	281
INV TRN TYPE	281
INVALID AMOUNT	284
INVALID CARD NUMBER	284
INVALID EXP DATE	285
INVALID LAST 4 DIGITS	285
INVALID SERVICE	286
INVALID TERM	281
INVALID TERM IF	281
INVL ARRIVAL-DT	281
INVL CHECKOUT DT	281
INVL FOLIO NBR	281
INVL ROOM RATE	281
INVL TERMINAL	281
INVL ACCT 1	281
INVL ACCT 2	281
INVL AMT 3	281
INVL MAC	281
INVL MER ID	281
INVL SETTLE 4	281
ITEM NOT FOUND	285

K

Keypad	290
KEYPAD MALFUNCTION	287
Keypad/Template Chart	6
Keypad/Template Definitions	7

Keypad/Template Design	5
------------------------------	---

L

Line Item Report	240
Local Dial Options	267
Local Functions	12, 14, 277, 278, 279
Local Printer Options	268
Lock Mode	264
Loyalty Card	17, 147, 150, 153, 156, 159

M

Maintenance	4
Management	261
Manual Transaction	290
MAX TIP \$999/	281
Missing Tip Report	255
MUST CLOSE BEFORE CONTINUING	283
MUST FIRST RECV AUTH	285

N

NO CARRIER	285
NO LINE	285
NO PIN PAD	284
NO SERVICE	285
NO TRANSACTIONS	285

O

Off-line Sale	9, 162, 290
Open Bar Tab	179
Open Tab Detail Report	253
Open Tab Review	234

P

PIN	290
PIN pad	80, 290
PLEASE RETRY	281
PRINTER MALFUNCTION	287
PRINTER REQUIRED	285
Printers	1, 4, 14
PROMPTS FILE	283

R

Receipt	81, 89, 95, 101, 105, 108, 111, 114, 117, 120, 123, 166, 170, 177, 182, 186, 192, 196, 199, 201, 204, 207, 221
RECEIVING	286
REFERRAL	282
REFERRAL-INV TR1	282
Report	213, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 272, 275
Reprint	259, 260, 290
RESEND BATCH	282
Return	7, 167, 290

Review.....	8, 224, 290
Review Transaction.....	230

S

Sale(Non Debit).....	7
Sale(Non Debit).....	291
Scroll.....	291
Serial Port.....	291
SERV NOT ALLOWED.....	282
Setup.....	265
Setup Passwords.....	266
Setup Report.....	272
Specifications.....	11
Split Dial.....	12, 17, 58, 77, 275
SprintNet.....	75
Swipe.....	291
SWIPE ONLY.....	286
SYSTEM PROBLEM.....	282

T

TASK ERR #146.....	285
TeleCheck.....	12, 14, 71
TeleCheck ECA Change.....	197
TeleCheck ECA Clear Batch.....	208
TeleCheck ECA Close.....	205
TeleCheck ECA Report.....	203
TeleCheck ECA Review.....	202, 203
TeleCheck ECA Sale.....	193
TeleCheck ECA Void.....	200
Telephone Line Cord.....	291
Terminal.....	291

Terminal Diagnostics.....	33
Cardreader Test.....	40
Clock Test.....	34
Dialer Test.....	35
Display Test.....	34
Keyboard Test.....	34
Line Voltage Test.....	37
Memory Analysis.....	43
Modem Answer Test.....	39
Modem Originate Test.....	38
Serial Port Test.....	42
Tip.....	18, 269
Track 1 Data.....	291
Track 2 Data.....	291
Transactions.....	83
Troubleshooting.....	283, 287
Truncation.....	13

U

Unadjusted Review.....	236
UNREADABLE CARD.....	286
Update Host Options.....	265

V

View Setup.....	273
Void.....	7, 184, 291

W

WAITING FOR PIN.....	286
----------------------	-----